420-0558G

Contents

| Setting Up the Access Server | 1 |
|--|------|
| Before you Begin | 1 |
| The Server's Parameter Databases | 2 |
| Define and Set Commands | 2 |
| Server Change Setting | 2 |
| Retaining Parameters when Loading New Software | 3 |
| Selecting Protocols and Features | 4 |
| Tip - Save Current Parameters Before Enabling Features/Protocols | 5 |
| Enabling UNIX Daemons | 8 |
| Managing Server Resources | 9 |
| How the Access Server Allocates Memory | . 10 |
| Text Pool Area | . 10 |
| Memory Management Guidelines | . 11 |
| Select Only Features and Protocols Necessary At Your Site | . 11 |
| Optimize Settings for the Enabled Features/Protocols | . 11 |
| Upgrading Memory | . 12 |
| Parameters that Directly Affect Memory Allocation | . 13 |
| Local Services | . 14 |
| LAT Services | . 14 |
| Domain Names | . 15 |
| Identifying Memory Problems | . 15 |
| Error Messages | . 16 |
| Server Displays | . 16 |
| Adjusting Parameters | . 17 |
| Server Node Limit | . 18 |
| Server Queue Limit | . 19 |
| Server Session Limit | . 19 |
| Server Textpool Size | . 20 |
| Server Packet Count | . 21 |
| Parameter Server Limit | . 21 |
| Port Typeahead Size | . 22 |
| Port Command Buffer Size | . 23 |
| Port IP TCP Window Size | . 23 |
| PORT TCP/IP Outbound Address | . 24 |
| Helpful Displays | . 24 |

| Show/Monitor Server Counters | 24 |
|--|----|
| Show/Monitor Server Status | 24 |
| Show/Monitor Server Alternate Status | |
| Using TCP/IP Features | 27 |
| Configuring IP Routes | |
| Host and Network Routes | 29 |
| Dynamic Routing | |
| Static Routing | |
| Define/Set Server IP Route | |
| Clear/Purge Server IP Route | |
| Show/List/Monitor Server IP Route | |
| IP Traffic Filtering | |
| Enabling IP Filtering | 34 |
| IP Traffic Filter Criteria | |
| Traffic Filter Commands | |
| IPX Traffic Filters | |
| Traffic Filter Criteria | |
| Determining the Most Specific Filter | |
| Traffic Filter Commands | |
| IPX-RIP Import/Export Filters | |
| When There Are Multiple Matching Filters | 45 |
| Defining RIP Filters | 45 |
| SAP Import/Export Filters | |
| SAP Filter Criteria | |
| When There Are Multiple Matching Filters | |
| Defining SAP Filters | |
| Configuring Rotary Connections | |
| Configuring the Rotary | 54 |
| Domain Name Storage | |
| Clear/Purge Server IP Rotary | 57 |
| Show/List/Monitor Server IP Rotary | 57 |
| Show/List Domain | |
| Clear/Purge Domain | |
| Configuring RLOGIN Support | |
| Considerations | 59 |
| Associated Commands | 59 |
| Defining RLOGIN Dedicated Services | 60 |
| Defining RLOGIN Preferred Services | 60 |
| Defining RLOGIN Transparent Mode | 61 |
| | |

| Network Management | 61 |
|--|----|
| Using SNMP | 62 |
| Obtaining/Importing the Supported MIBs | 64 |
| Defining a Trap Client | 65 |
| Assigning SNMP Security Information (Optional) | 65 |
| Miscellaneous SNMP Settings | 69 |
| Using Telnet to Access the Console Port | 70 |
| Telnet Console Command | 71 |
| Define/Set Server Console Logout | 72 |
| Loading through Internet Protocols | 72 |
| Loading Images and Parameter Files | 74 |
| Configuring Load Protocols | 75 |
| Directed TFTP | 75 |
| Eliminating TFTP Broadcasts | 76 |
| Saving Parameters in the Permanent Database | 76 |
| Dump Transmission | 77 |
| Define/Set Parameter Server | 77 |
| Define/Set Server Parameter Server Check | 77 |
| Show Server Status Display | 78 |
| Using the Server as a Domain Name Server | 78 |
| Domain Name Resolution | 78 |
| Obtaining/Storing Domain Names | 79 |
| Domain Name Time-to-Live (TTL) | 80 |
| Define/Set Domain | 80 |
| Show/List Domain | 81 |
| Clear/Purge Domain | 81 |
| Using IP Reassembly | 82 |
| Using TCP Resequencing | 83 |
| Setting Up TN3270 Terminals | 84 |
| Translation Tables | 85 |
| Enabling the TN3720 Protocol | 85 |
| Enabling Extended Attributes | 86 |
| Defining TN3270 Devices | 87 |
| Creating a New Device Type | 88 |
| Using the TN3270 Command | 88 |
| Defining a TN3270 TERMINALTYPE | 89 |
| Defining the TN3278TYPE | 89 |
| Modifying the Keymap | 90 |
| IBM 3270 Display Station Functions for TN3270 Keymap | 91 |
| | |

| Modifying the Screenmap | 93 |
|--|-----|
| Assigning a TN3270 Device to a Port | |
| Assigning a Default Port Number for TN3270 Sessions | |
| Assigning Userdata Strings for Telnet Dedicated Services | |
| Other Commands that Affect TN3270 Devices | |
| Defining TN3270 Translation Tables | |
| Creating a New Translation Table | |
| Entering New Values Into the Table | 105 |
| Assigning a Translation Table to a Port | |
| Other Commands that Affect Translation Tables | 109 |
| Using Alternate Keymaps | |
| Defining the Alternate Keymaps | |
| Error Codes | 113 |
| Using Line 25 as a Status Line | |
| Change the Terminal Display | |
| Select the 25th Line | |
| Activate the 25th Line | 117 |
| Status Line Information | |
| Local Printer Support | |
| Setting Up Daemons | |
| Enabling Daemons | |
| Using the Finger Daemon (fingerd) | |
| Using the Route Daemon (routed) | 125 |
| Using the rwho Daemon (rwhod) | |
| Using Nested Menus | |
| Memory Requirements | |
| About the Nested Menu Feature | |
| How the Server Obtains the Menu File | 131 |
| How a Port Obtains the Menus | 131 |
| Setting Up Script Servers | 131 |
| Creating the Nested Menu File | 134 |
| %menu_file | |
| %menu_start <i>n title</i> | |
| %menu_entry n entry-description command-string | |
| %menu <i>n</i> | 136 |
| %menu_wait | |
| %menu_noprompt | |
| %menu_end | |
| %menu_prompt prompt-text | 137 |

| %menu_continue prompt-text | . 137 |
|---|-------|
| %menu_top x text-string | . 137 |
| %menu_up x text-string | . 138 |
| %menu_exit <i>x text-string</i> | . 138 |
| %menu_logout x text-string | . 138 |
| %menu_repaint <i>x text-string</i> | . 138 |
| Using Comment Lines in the Menu File | . 139 |
| General Guidelines | . 139 |
| Debugging the Menu File | . 140 |
| Configuring the Server to Support Nested Menus | . 140 |
| Server Settings | . 140 |
| Port Settings | . 142 |
| Sample Nested Menu Files | . 144 |
| Sample File 1 | . 144 |
| Sample File 2 | . 148 |
| Using Scripts | . 159 |
| How the Script Feature Works | . 160 |
| Setting Up the Script Server | . 161 |
| Create the Script File | . 164 |
| Writing the Script | . 164 |
| The # Character | . 166 |
| Directory Requirements | . 167 |
| Setting Up the Access Server to Use Scripts | . 169 |
| Define/Set Port Script Echo | . 170 |
| Script, Set Port Script | . 170 |
| Clear/Purge Server Script Server | . 171 |
| Show/List/Monitor Server Script Server | . 171 |
| Script File Execution and Processing | . 172 |
| Sample Scripts | . 174 |
| Using the Accounting Feature | . 175 |
| Enabling the Accounting Feature | . 176 |
| Enabling the syslogd Daemon | . 177 |
| Defining Two syslogd Hosts on the Access Server | . 178 |
| Information In the Account Log | . 179 |
| The Default Account Log | . 179 |
| Memory Considerations | . 180 |
| Sample Default Account Log | . 181 |
| Enabling the Verbose Account Log | . 181 |
| Verbose Priority Number and Log File Location | . 182 |
| | |

| Clearing the Account Log | 184 |
|--|-----|
| Associated Displays | 184 |
| Show/Monitor Server Accounting | 184 |
| Show/List/Monitor Server Characteristics | 184 |
| Show/List Unit and Show/List/Monitor Server Alternate Status | 185 |
| Maintaining Boot Records | 185 |
| Viewing Initialization Settings | 186 |
| Status of MX-1608A/1620/1640 Initialization Records | 187 |
| Enabling and Disabling Protocols | 188 |
| Changing Protocols through Commands | 189 |
| CARD, NVS, XMOP, and MOP Protocols | 190 |
| CARD Protocol | 190 |
| NVS Protocol | 190 |
| XMOP and MOP Protocols | 190 |
| Changing the Software Filename | 191 |
| BOOTP and RARP Protocols | 191 |
| DTFTP Protocol | 192 |
| Resetting Parameters to Defaults | 194 |
| Using Security Features | 194 |
| Passwords | 195 |
| Login Password | 196 |
| Privilege Password | 196 |
| Maintenance Password | 197 |
| Privilege Levels | 198 |
| Remote Authentication Dial In User Service (RADIUS) | 200 |
| Understanding the RADIUS Authentication Process | 201 |
| Using Kerberos Authentication | 203 |
| Using SecurID Authentication | 206 |
| SecurID Client Features | 206 |
| Using Internet Security | 208 |
| Controlling Access to Network Resources | 209 |
| Port Access Setting | 209 |
| Limited View Protection for Network Resources | 210 |
| Authorized LAT Service Groups | 211 |
| Password Protection for LAT Services | 211 |
| Time Server Enhancement | 212 |
| RADIUS Security | 214 |
| Multiple Levels of Security | 214 |
| Challenge/Response Process | 215 |

| 215 |
|-----|
| 215 |
| 216 |
| 216 |
| 219 |
| 221 |
| 225 |
| 227 |
| 230 |
| 230 |
| 235 |
| 235 |
| 238 |
| 238 |
| 239 |
| 240 |
| 240 |
| 240 |
| 241 |
| 242 |
| 244 |
| 245 |
| 248 |
| 251 |
| 255 |
| 255 |
| 255 |
| 256 |
| 257 |
| 258 |
| 258 |
| 259 |
| 259 |
| 260 |
| 260 |
| 261 |
| 263 |
| 263 |
| 263 |
| |

| Show Server Securid Display | . 263 |
|---|-------|
| Getting Started - Internet Security | . 264 |
| Defining Internet Security Information for the Server | . 264 |
| Port Security | . 265 |
| Specifying the Security Mask | . 267 |
| Direction and Access | . 268 |
| Internet Security Examples | . 270 |
| Controlling Outbound Access | . 271 |
| Controlling Inbound Access | . 272 |
| Removing Security Table Entries | . 274 |
| Viewing IP Security Entries | . 274 |
| Using Scripts to Enhance Network Security | . 276 |
| Dialback Modem Scripts | . 276 |
| Dial-Up Security | . 278 |
| Dial-Back Security | . 278 |
| Time-Sensitive Passwords | . 279 |
| APD Port Authentication Command | . 279 |
| AppleTalk Remote Access (ARAP) Notes | . 280 |
| CCL Notes (Using Modem-Based Compression) | . 281 |
| Packet Rejection Message | . 281 |
| Active User and Active Ports | . 282 |
| SNMP | . 282 |
| ITS NTASC RADIUS Support | . 282 |
| How the Server Obtains the Current Time | . 282 |
| Obtaining the Time | . 284 |

Appendix A - Compatibility Issues

Appendix B - DEC Software Install and Management Tools

Index

Figures

| Figure 1. IP Route | 28 |
|---|-----|
| Figure 2 - Server IP Routes Display | 32 |
| Figure 3. IP Traffic Filter Example | 38 |
| Figure 4. IPX Traffic Filter Example | 43 |
| Figure 5. Rotary Connections | 53 |
| Figure 6. Server IP Rotary Display | 57 |
| Figure 7. Connecting to Host through RLOGIN | 58 |
| Figure 8. Network Management through SNMP | 63 |
| Figure 9. Telnet Connections to Console Ports | 70 |
| Figure 10. Loading through Internet Protocols | 73 |
| Figure 11. Show Domain Display | 81 |
| Figure 12. Server TN3270 Display | 110 |
| Figure 13. Server TN3270 Translationtable Display | 110 |
| Figure 14. Three-Level Menu Structure | 129 |
| Figure 15. Sample Menu | 130 |
| Figure 16. Sample Script Server Directory Structure | 132 |
| Figure 17. Sample Script Server Directory Structure | 162 |
| Figure 18. Server Script Server Display | 171 |
| Figure 19. Sample Accounting Display | 181 |
| Figure 20. Verbose Account Log | 182 |
| Figure 21. Server Loaddump Primary Characteristics - MX-1620. | 186 |
| Figure 22. RADIUS Authentication Process | 202 |
| Figure 23. Kerberos Realm | 204 |
| Figure 24. Kerberos Password Verification | 205 |
| Figure 25. IP Network | 270 |
| Figure 26. Server IP Security Display | 275 |
| Figure 27. Port IP Security Display | 275 |
| Figure 28. Show Server Display | 285 |

Tables

| Table 1 - Memory Usage For Features and Protocols | 6 |
|--|-----|
| Table 2 - UNIX Daemons | |
| Table 3 - Memory Usage for Various Session Types | 12 |
| Table 4 - Server Settings that Affect Memory Usage | 13 |
| Table 5 - Server Session Limit, Server Text Pool | 13 |
| Table 6 - Port Settings that Affect Memory Usage | 14 |
| Table 7 - Server Status Display Fields | 25 |
| Table 8 - Server Alternate Status Fields | |
| Table 9 - Get/Set Client and Community Settings | 66 |
| Table 10 - IBM Display Station Functions | |
| Table 11 - Screenmap Actions | |
| Table 12 - Special Values for Escape Sequences | |
| Table 13 - EBCDICTOASCII, USENGLSH Translation Table | 106 |
| Table 14 - ASCIITOEBCDIC, USENGLSH Translation Table | 107 |
| Table 15 - The %menu Commands | 134 |
| Table 16 - Priority Numbers for Messages from UNIX Daemons | 183 |
| Table 17 - Protocols for Loading and Dumping | 188 |
| Table 18 - Privilege Levels | 198 |
| Table 19 - RADIUS Supported Attributes | 236 |
| Table 20 - RADIUS Supported Accounting Attributes | 248 |
| Table 21. RADIUS-Related Server Accounting Messages | 251 |

Preface

This manual describes the setup and management of advanced Access Server features. Its intended audience includes network, server, and UNIX and VAX host system managers.

Conventions

This manual uses the following conventions:

- Keys that you press are represented using left and right angle brackets (< and >). For example, the notation <CTRL> means that you press the CTRL key; <A> means that you press the A key; and <RETURN> means that you press the RETURN key.
- Unless otherwise specified, commands are executed when you press <RETURN>.
- The manual uses the following typographical conventions:

| Monospace Typeface | indicates text displayed at a terminal (displays, messages, system responses, etc). |
|--------------------|---|
| italics | indicates variables in commands and procedures. |

• The command prompt for non-privileged and secure users is:

Xyplex>

The command prompt for privileged users is:

Xyplex>>

This is the default user interface prompt; a server manager can specify a different prompt, so the prompt in use at your site might be different.

• The following typeface indicates user input in response to system prompts:

Xyplex> connect

• The following default user prompts are used (different prompts might be in use at your site):

| VMS | \$ |
|-----------------------|-----|
| UNIX/ULTRIX | % |
| UNIX/Ultrix Superuser | # |
| DOS | C:\ |

If you have questions about this product...

At your convenience, please forward these to Xyplex at the following addresses:

| Internet Mail: | support@xyplex.com | | |
|---------------------|---------------------|--|--|
| United States Mail: | Xyplex, Inc. | | |
| | 295 Foster Street | | |
| | Littleton, MA 01460 | | |

Attn: Manager, Customer Support

Setting Up the Access Server

This section describes steps that you must take before setting up access server features. It covers the following topics:

- Getting started
- The server's parameter databases
- Selecting protocols and features
- Enabling UNIX daemons

Before you Begin

Once you have completed the steps in the *Getting Started Guide* supplied with your access server, you can set up the access server for your specific needs. Some of the related tasks are covered in the rest of this section Others are covered in later sections under the *Basic Configuration* or *Printers* section).

Specify which protocols, features, and daemons are to be used.

Note that some servers do not have enough memory to support all of the available features concurrently. Also, some features are disabled by default; you must enable them if you plan to use them.

Reboot the access server after enabling features and protocols.

This allows all of the changes that you have made to take effect. Use the Initialize command to reboot the server (e.g., INIT DELAY 0).

Assign basic IP settings, if applicable. (This step does not apply to LAT-only units.) The IP settings that you need to specify include:

- The server's IP address and subnet mask
- Domain name server settings

• Other settings that enable the access server to communicate through IP gateways, if needed.

Refer to "Setting Up TN3270 Terminals" for more information about these settings.

The Server's Parameter Databases

Access servers keep a *permanent database* of settings, which includes port and server settings, a list of services offered at the server, and in some cases destinations to which users can connect. When you reboot the server, the contents of the permanent database are copied into memory to serve as an "operational database."

Define and Set Commands

Changes to the operational database are discarded when you reboot the server or a user logs off from a port. Use a Define command to change settings in the parameter file permanently. Use a Set command to change parameters temporarily.

Server Change Setting

Changes to settings that you make through Define commands take effect when you reboot the server. However, you can set the Server Change setting to Enabled, in which case Define commands take effect immediately.

Retaining Parameters when Loading New Software

To maintain your current parameters when you install a new software diskette or memory card, follow these steps:

- 1. Insert the new diskette or memory card into the access server.
- 2. Issue a Define command, such as DEFINE PORT 1 TYPE ANSI. This forces the server to update all parameters on the diskette or memory card.
- 3. Wait a minute, then issue the SHOW PARAMETER SERVER or MONITOR PARAMETER SERVER command. Check that the display shows "Storage State: Idle" and "Status: Current." For a Network 9000 720 module, make sure that the CARD light is off.
- 4. Reboot the access server to load the new software version.

Selecting Protocols and Features

Xyplex Access Servers offer many features and network protocols — more than most sites require. The protocols and features that you use depends on your network environment and the amount of memory installed in the server. "Managing Access Server Resources" explains how to select the appropriate features and protocols for your site.

Table 1 lists various protocols and features and the amount of memory that each requires. In general, if you do not require a particular protocol or a feature, you should disable it to free up memory.

Use this command to enable or disable a protocol:

```
DEFINE SERVER PROTOCOL protocol-name [ENABLED]
[DISABLED]
```

Valid *protocol* values are listed in the first column of Table 1. If the server requires a password to enable a protocol, it will prompt you for it. Contact your Xyplex Sales Representative or Distributor for information about obtaining the password(s).

Use this command to enable or disable a feature:

```
DEFINE SERVER feature [ENABLED]
[DISABLED]
```

Valid *features* are listed in the first column of Table 1.

Reboot the server after you have made all feature changes. When you enable a feature, the server sets all related server or port settings to their default values. When you disable a feature, the server changes all related server or port settings to reflect the fact that the feature is disabled. (For example, if you disable the Menu feature, the Port Menu setting is also set to Disabled for each port.) When you enable or disable a feature, the server displays a message indicating approximately how much memory remains available:

-705- Change leaves approximately nnnnn bytes free.

IMPORTANT

Xyplex *strongly* recommends that you leave a minimum of 180 KB of memory available after enabling all needed features. If the server does not have enough memory to support a feature, it will display a message indicating approximately how much memory you must free up to enable the feature:

-708- Requires approximately *nnnnn* additional bytes; Change not done.

Tip - Save Current Parameters Before Enabling Features/Protocols

Because free memory might be fragmented (divided into pieces), the server might have enough total memory to load a feature — but not enough contiguous memory to run it. When this happens, the server appears to have enough memory — until you attempt to reboot it and the boot process fails.

At this point, you cannot reboot the server until you load a copy of an old parameter file that you have saved, or load the default parameter file. Rebooting with a saved parameter file saves much effort because you do not have reset all previously configured settings.

Xyplex recommends that you save a copy of your original parameter file before you create a new one. If the new parameter file requires too much memory, the server will not boot.

| Feature Name | Memory Used in Kilobytes | Туре | Default | Comments | |
|--------------------------|--|--------------------|----------------------|---|--|
| LAT | 55 | Protocol | Enabled | | |
| TN3270 | 55 | Protocol | Disabled | | |
| SNMP | 80 | Protocol | Disabled/ Enabled | Disabled by default for 1 ME load images; Enabled by default for multi-MB load images. | |
| KERBEROS 4 KERBEROS 5 | 30 50 | Feature Feature | Disabled Disabled | These features are mutually exclusive. | |
| ACCOUNTING | 0.5 to 90 | Feature | 0.5 | Memory used depends on number of accounting entries. | |
| MENU | 7 | Feature | Disabled | | |
| MULTISESSIONS | 12 | Feature | Disabled | | |
| INTERNET SECURITY | 12 | Feature | Disabled | | |
| HELP | 88 (2+ MB units) 30 (1 MB units) | Feature | Disabled | With V6.0 and later, full Help is disabled in multi-MB images. | |
| XREMOTE | 22 | Protocol | Disabled | Requires more memory for each open session. Requires Multi-MB load image. | |
| Manager Load | 375 | Feature | See Comment | Enabled by default on Access Server 720 and MAXserver 1620/1640 Access Servers if a memory card is present at initialization. Disabled on 1600/1450. | |

Table 1 - Memory Usage For Features and Protocols

| Xprinter | 25 plus 2 additiona l per port | Protocol | Disabled | Requires Multi-MB load image | |
|---|---|----------|----------|---|--|
| PPP (Point-to- Point Protocol | 20 plus 6 additiona 1 per port | | Disabled | Requires Multi-MB load image | |
| ULI (UNIX [®] Operating System-Like Interface | 32 | Feature | Enabled | Additional space required for command aliases (up to 512 bytes per port). | |
| Nested Menus | 40 | Feature | Disabled | Additional memory required for the menu file. | |
| ARAP | 160 plus 43 additiona l per port | Protocol | Disabled | Requires Multi-MB image | |
| IPX | 84 | Protocol | Disabled | Requires Multi-MB image | |
| IP Filtering | 10 | Feature | Disabled | Requires Multi-MB image | |
| IPX Filtering | 25 | Feature | Disabled | Requires Multi-MB image | |
| APD | 5 | Feature | Disabled | Requires Multi-MB image | |
| SecurID | 15 | Feature | Disabled | Requires Multi-MB image | |
| RADIUS | 11 | Feature | Disabled | Requires Multi-MB image; at least 4 MB installed memory | |
| lpd | 8 | Daemon | Disabled | Requires Multi-MB image | |

Enabling UNIX Daemons

Xyplex Access Servers support several UNIX daemons, which are system processes that run in background mode at network hosts. Daemons are commonly used in UNIX environments and TCP/IP networks to exchange information about network activity, or to manage resources such as printers and peripherals.

Use this command to enable UNIX daemons:

```
DEFINE SERVER DAEMON daemon-name [ENABLED] [DISABLED]
```

Valid *daemon-names* include fingerd, routed, rwhod, lpd, and syslogd. They are disabled by default. Table 2 lists the memory requirements for each daemon except syslogd. The memory allocation for this daemon is not dynamic. The syslogd daemon maintains an accounting log on the UNIX host (see "Accounting" in Table 1).

| Daemon | Memory Used in Kilobytes |
|---------|--------------------------|
| fingerd | 12 |
| routed | 8 |
| rwhod | 6 |
| lpd | 16 |

Table 2 - UNIX Daemons

Managing Server Resources

An access server allocates (sets aside portions of) its memory to support activities such as:

- Storing the software load image and parameters
- Supporting enabled features and protocols
- Storing information about sessions, network destinations, and the connection queue
- Providing session resources, such as the typeahead buffer, for users

Since each site's needs are different, the access server enables you to specify how the memory is allocated. This section explains how to do so, and covers these topics:

- How the access server allocates memory
- Strategies for managing memory
- Parameters that directly affect memory allocation
- Helpful displays

How the Access Server Allocates Memory

The server allocates memory when it boots. The server first loads its software image, then the parameter file. It then checks the list of configurable features and protocols in the parameter file, to determine which ones are enabled. The server then frees up memory that is not being used by the disabled features/protocols.

Next, the server allocates portions of memory for specific purposes, or to store specific types of data. The server is then ready to run.

In general, further memory allocations occur on an as-needed basis. For example, the server can allocate memory to store information about a LAT service, or to provide resources such as the typeahead buffer when a user wants to establish a new session. Similarly, the server frees up memory when it is no longer needed, or when instructed by the server manager.

Text Pool Area

The text pool area is a permanently allocated portion of memory, the size of which is fixed when the server boots. The server stores identification strings for nodes, LAT services, and domain names in this area. When the server boots, it immediately stores in the text pool space the identification strings for the local services and domain names that are currently stored in the permanent database.

The server fills the remaining text pool space as needed. (All other information about nodes and services is stored in a non-text pool portion of memory and is allocated when needed.)

Memory Management Guidelines

The goal of memory management is to balance the relationship among features and protocols, performance, and cost-effectiveness. A proper balance ensures that the server has enough resources for all users when needed.

Select Only Features and Protocols Necessary At Your Site

Table 1 and Table 2 list protocols, features, and UNIX daemons thatyou can enable, and the amount of memory that each requires."Setting Up the Access Server" explains how to enable/disable features,protocols, and daemons.

To free up memory, you should disable the protocols and features that you do not need. Some protocols or features require that another protocol also be enabled. For example, SNMP, TN3270, and Kerberos require that Telnet be enabled.

Help does not rely on other features or protocols.

Optimize Settings for the Enabled Features/Protocols

Server, port, and per-session settings can affect the amount of memory that a feature uses, and the performance of sessions that make use of the feature.

Typically, you do not need to change these settings after they are initially defined. Often, the default values are adequate. However, you might need to monitor and adjust some settings for better performance, and to ensure that there is enough memory to support all users' needs.

For example, Table 3 lists the amount of memory that various types of sessions use when the related Server and Port settings are set to the default values:

| Session Type (Using default PORT values) | Memory Used Per Session (Bytes) |
|---|--|
| LAT session | 1568, plus 1200 per virtual circuit |
| Telnet session | 2320 |
| TN3270 Model 2 session: no Extended Attributes | 5104 |
| TN3270 Model 2 session: with Extended Attributes | 7008 |
| TN3270 Model 5 session: no Extended Attributes | 6720 |
| TN3270 Model 5 session: with Extended Attributes | 10352 |
| Xremote Session | 78300 for the initial X connection and XDM login window, plus 27000 for each additional window |

Table 3 - Memory Usage for Various Session Types

Upgrading Memory

If you cannot enable every feature that you need and still have enough memory available for users' sessions, you might need to add memory to the server or upgrade to a model that supports more memory. The Network 9000 Access Server 720 and MAXserver 800, 1600, 1620, and 1640 servers all offer memory upgrade options.

Parameters that Directly Affect Memory Allocation

The values you set for the Server settings in Table 4 and Table 5, and the Port settings in Table 6, control the maximum amount of memory that the server software can allocate. For example, the software can allocate a larger portion of memory when the Server Node Limit setting is 300 than when it is 200. Except for the TextPool Size, the server does not actually allocate memory for these settings until it is needed.

| Characteristic | Default | Minimum | Maximum |
|------------------------|---------|---------|---------|
| Node Limit | 100 | 1 | 1000 |
| Parameter Server Limit | 4 | 1 | 8 |
| Queue Limit | 24 | 0 | 100 |
| Identification Size | 63 | 0 | 63 |

Table 4 - Server Settings that Affect Memory Usage

| Table 5 - Server | Session Limit | , Server | Text Pool |
|------------------|---------------|----------|-----------|
|------------------|---------------|----------|-----------|

| Product | Session Limit Default / Min / Max | Textpool Size Default / Min / Max |
|---------------------|--------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| MX 1820 | 64 / 0 / 255 | 16384 / 8192 / 131070 |
| MX 2120/2220 | 64 / 0 / 255 | 8192 / 8192 / 131070 |
| MX 1620/1640/1608A | 64 / 0 / 255 | 16384 / 8192 / 131070 |
| MX 800 | 64 / 0 / 64 | 16384 / 8192 / 131070 |
| Network 9000 AS/720 | 64 / 0 / 255 | 16384 / 8192 / 131070 |

| Product | Setting | Minimum | Maximum | Default |
|--|-----------------------|---------|---------|---------|
| MX 2120/2220 server | Session Limit | 0 | 16 | 4 |
| cards, MX | Typeahead Size | 80 | 16384 | 128 |
| 1608A/1620/1640 | Command Size | 80 | 16384 | 80 |
| Standalone Access | | | | |
| Servers | IP TCP Window | 64 | 8192 | 256 |
| | Size | 01 | 0102 | 200 |
| Network 9000 Access | Session Limit | 0 | 16 | 4 |
| Server 720 | Typeahead Size | 80 | 16384 | 128 |
| | Command Size | 80 | 16384 | 80 |
| | IP TCP Window Size | 64 | 8192 | 256 |
| The Typeahead Buffer Size is used during sessions. The Command Buffer Size | | | | |
| is used when the command prompt (e.g., Xyplex>) is present. Xyplex | | | | |
| recommends that you leave the Command Buffer Size at its default setting. | | | | |

Table 6 - Port Settings that Affect Memory Usage

Local Services

The server software allocates a fixed amount of memory for the local services that the server makes available. The actual number of available local services depends on the amount of text pool space that is available. (Refer to "Text Pool Area".)

LAT Services

The server stores information about LAT services to which users can make connections. The Server Service Groups setting controls the number of LAT services that are available. You specify a *group-list* for this setting, which has no maximum value.

Domain Names

For domain names, information other than identification strings is stored in non-text pool memory. The server software allocates this memory whenever it stores a domain name. The amount of non-text pool space used to store domain name information depends on the number of domain names being stored, and text pool limitations.

Table 5 lists the default, minimum, and maximum values for the session limit and text pool size for various server models. This table assumes that the server has the basic amount of installed memory. The Show Server Characteristics display shows the current values for these settings.

Identifying Memory Problems

If there is *not enough memory* allocated for a setting, users might not be able to connect to nodes or services because the memory limit has been reached. If *too much memory* is allocated, the server might not have enough memory for other purposes. For example, if you allocate too much memory for the Node Limit setting, the server might not be able to allocate an adequate Typeahead Buffer.

The section "Adjusting Parameters" describes how to adjust various server and port parameters to meet your needs.

Error Messages

The server software generates error and status messages when too much or too little memory is allocated for a setting. For example, when a user attempts to establish a new session or connect to a node or service that is normally available, the following messages might appear:

-710- Node node-name not known
-711- Service service-name not known
-719- Insufficient resources to complete operation
-772- Queued access failed, error or no response from service

The first two messages might indicate that the server does not have enough memory to store the unknown node or service name. The third message might indicate that the server has prevented an operation because too much memory had been allocated already. The last message might indicate that the connection queue is full.

Server Displays

Certain server displays also indicate memory allocation problems. For example, the following displays indicate when users are unable to locate a node, service, or a domain name — possibly indicating that you need to adjust the memory allocation:

SHOW/MONITOR DESTINATIONS SHOW/MONITOR DOMAIN SHOW/MONITOR NODE SHOW/MONITOR SERVICE

The section "Helpful Displays" describes the useful information in these displays.

Adjusting Parameters

This section describes the settings that affect memory allocation and explains how to change settings to free up memory.

In addition to adjusting these settings, you can use the following procedures to free up memory or text pool space, or to change a server's memory setup.

% Memory Used — Check the % Memory Used field of the Show Server Status display whenever the server uses the maximum amount of memory for a given resource (e.g., the Typeahead Buffer). If the maximum % Memory Used is lower than 80 - 90 percent, you can usually correct the problem by increasing the value for the setting that controls that resource. If the maximum % Memory Used is already very high, you should probably consider freeing up memory elsewhere as well.

Server Identification Size — Decrease the storage requirements for identification strings for local services, LAT services offered on the network, nodes, and domain names. This releases text pool space so that the server can store information about additional services, nodes, and domain names. To do this, you can change the value of the Server Identification Size setting or use shorter service, node, and domain names.

LAT Service Groups — Restrict the number of LAT service groups that the server uses; only use groups that users actually need. This limits the number of LAT services and nodes that offer services. This change is most helpful on a busy server that is part of a large network. Restricting the number of LAT groups results in more text pool and non-text pool space, and more efficient use of LAT virtual circuits.

Typeahead Buffers — Check that the typeahead buffers are not unnecessarily large. This releases memory for other needs.

Command Buffers — Xyplex recommends that you leave the Command Buffer Size at its default setting (80). You typically do not need to increase it — even if you need to increase the Typeahead Size.

Local Services — Move a local service to a less heavily loaded server. This releases small amounts of both text pool and non-text pool memory.

Packet Buffers — Some features and network protocols, such as IP reassembly, Xremote, SLIP, and PPP, require a large number of packet buffers for ideal performance. If you are running one of these protocols and experience poor performance, you should increase the packet buffer count. PPP requires five packet buffers for port speeds less than 57.6 Kbps and 10 buffers for speeds of 57.6 Kbps or greater. SLIP always requires 10 packet buffers.

TCP Window Size The Port IP TCP Window Size setting specifies the size of the TCP window used during a session. If you define a window size that is too large, the server might not have enough memory to support the usual number of sessions.

Server Node Limit

If users are unable to connect to a node that *should* be available, or cannot locate a node or service in a Show Node, Show Service, or Show Destinations display — or if the Show Server Status display indicates Discarded Nodes or Resource Errors — you should check the Show Server Alternate Status display and the Reachable Nodes and Connected Nodes fields of the Server Status display.

If the "highest" load is the same as the "maximum" load in the Reachable Nodes field, the Server Node Limit setting might be set too low. If the highest load is less than the maximum load, then the Server Textpool Size might be set too low. The Server Alternate Status display also indicates whether there is a problem with text pool memory or non-text pool memory.

The Connected Nodes field in the Server Status display shows the number of service nodes to which the server has established a LAT virtual circuit. If the "current" value is the same as the "maximum" value, the server will not permit a user to connect to another node.

If this is causing connection failures, you do not have a memory allocation problem. To eliminate this problem, decrease the number of virtual circuits that the server needs to establish, by moving users who usually connect to a given node to a different server.

Server Queue Limit

When the Solicitations Rejected and Solicitations Accepted fields of the Show Server Counters display indicate a large number of rejected queued connection requests — relative to the number of accepted requests — check the Queue Limit field of the Server Status display. If the "high" number of queue entries in this field is the same as the "maximum" number, you might need to increase the Server Queue Limit setting.

If the number is lower, connection requests might be failing for other reasons. Otherwise, if you have noticed problems with other resources, you might need to lower the value for the Server Queue Limit setting and raise the value for the setting with which you are having the problem.

Server Session Limit

The Session Limit setting determines the maximum number of active sessions the server can support concurrently. If users are unable to make additional connections because the server has reached this limit — or because of a resource limitation — the Session Limit might be set too low. Check the Connected Sessions and Resource Error fields of the Show Server Status display.

The Session Limit might be too low if the "highest" load equals the "maximum" allowed. If the highest load is less than the maximum allowed, and there are resource errors, you must free up additional memory to allow for additional sessions.

Server Textpool Size

You control the size of the text pool area through the Server Textpool Size setting. Since the text pool area is permanently allocated, you reduce the amount of memory available for non-text pool memory when you increase the size of this area. Also, lengthy identification strings can fill up the text pool space and limit the number of nodes, services, and domain names available to users.

If users cannot connect to a node or service that *should* be available, or are unable to locate a node or service in a Show Node or Show Service display — or if the Show Server Status display indicates that "Discarded Nodes" or "Resource Errors" have occurred, check the Show Server Alternate Status display. If this display indicates that there have been "Free Text Pool" errors, you should increase the Textpool Size.

If the Show Server Alternate Status display indicates that there have been "Free Memory" failures, you should decrease the Textpool Size. If this is not possible, consider reducing the size of the node and service identification strings that must be stored in the text pool area. You can do this for node names, domain names, local services, and LAT services offered by other hosts and servers on the network.

Server Packet Count

Some features and network protocols, such as IP reassembly, Xremote, and PPP, require a large number of packet buffers for ideal performance. If you are running one of these protocols, and have experienced poor performance, you should increase the packet buffer count through the following command:

DEFINE SERVER PACKET COUNT packet-buffers

You can specify a *packet-buffers* value from 80 to 1088 for units with 2+ MB of memory, and 80 to 160 for units with less than 2 MB of memory. The default is 80.

Increasing the number of packet buffers can improve performance and response time, but doing so will decrease the amount of available free memory. The Show/Monitor Server Alternate Status display lists the number of packet buffers being used and the maximum number available.

Parameter Server Limit

A server does not require much memory to store information about parameter servers. If a heavily used server is unable to store information about all eligible parameter servers, its Server Parameter Server Limit setting is set too low. You can adjust the setting to match the number of available parameter servers in your network, through the following command. The maximum value for the setting is eight; the default is four.

DEFINE SERVER PARAMETER SERVER LIMIT number

If there are more than eight parameter servers in your network, you can use the Set Parameter Server command to define specific parameter servers, and the Clear Parameter Server command to remove other parameter servers.

Port Typeahead Size

The Port Typeahead Buffer can contain between 80 and 16384 characters. The default buffer size, 128 bytes, is adequate for most situations. You only need to increase this value if an application requires it (e.g., certain VAX/VMS applications).

VAX/VMS Typeahead Buffers

VAX/VMS terminal sessions use a separate typeahead buffer or alternate typeahead buffer, which is specified through VMS SYSGEN settings. If the size of the server typeahead buffer is larger than the VAX typeahead buffer, the VAX typeahead buffer can overrun during data transfers.

During asynchronous port use, this overrun might cause the VAX session to issue ASCII BELL characters to the server, rather than XOFF characters. This is most noticeable when a user continuously presses an arrow key while using an editor, or when using an asynchronous file transfer protocol, such as XMODEM.

If this problem occurs, the VAX system manager can specify a typeahead buffer size, or alternate typeahead buffer size, that is large enough to support packets sent by the server and the asynchronous file transfer protocol.

For example, the XMODEM software package properly transfers binary files from a host to a PC when using a typeahead buffer size of 512 characters. On a system with VMS 5.0, the VMS system manager would run the SYSGEN program, enter the following commands from the SYSGEN> prompt, and then reboot the system:

```
SYSGEN> SET TTY_TYPAHDSZ 512
SYSGEN> WRITECURRENT
```

When you use an asynchronous file transfer protocol, you can increase the server typeahead buffer to match the VMS typeahead buffer size through the Set Port Typeahead Size command. However, since the larger VMS typeahead buffer applies to all terminals, increasing its size will use more of the computer's memory.

Port Command Buffer Size

The Port Typeahead Buffer can contain between 80 and 16384 characters. The default buffer size, 80 bytes, is enough for most uses. Xyplex recommends that you leave the default setting intact — *even if you need to increase the Typeahead Buffer Size*.

This setting controls the number of characters that can be buffered (temporarily stored) at the command prompt (e.g., Xyplex>) before overruns occur. It differs from the port typeahead setting, which is used during sessions.

Port IP TCP Window Size

The Port IP TCP Window Size setting specifies the size of the TCP window used during a session. Valid values are whole numbers between 64 and 8192. The default value is 256. If you define a window size greater than 256, the server might not have enough memory for the usual number of sessions. A typical TCP/IP session requires about:

```
[1600 + (3 * TCP_window_size)] bytes
```

The window size that is in effect when a session begins remains in effect for the entire session.

PORT TCP/IP Outbound Address

This setting allows each serial port on the access server to have a unique IP address for outbound connections. The command is:

DEFINE/SET PORT IP TCP OUTBOUND ADDRESS [ip-address]

If you set this feature on a port, the IP address is used for all outbound connections, if this feature is not set, then the access server's IP address is used for outbound connections.

Helpful Displays

This section describes displays that provide useful information when you are monitoring memory usage.

Show/Monitor Server Counters

This display shows statistics about server activity, and indicates when errors have occurred. Important fields include:

- Solicitations Accepted
- Solicitations Rejected

Refer to "Server Queue Limit" for descriptions of these fields.

Show/Monitor Server Status

This display indicates how well the server is operating under the current load and can be helpful in identifying network or port problems. Table 7 describes the important fields:
| Field | Description |
|--------------------|--|
| Queue Entries | The number of connection requests in the server's connection queue. Refer to "Server Queue Limit" for more information. |
| Available Services | The number of LAT services for which the server is storing information in its memory, and which are therefore available to users. Refer to "LAT Services" and "Server Textpool Size" for more information. |
| Local Services | The number of LAT services offered at the server. If you have a problem creating a new local service, refer to "LAT Services". |
| Reachable Nodes | The number of LAT nodes, including computers and other servers, that offer services and are reachable for service connections. Refer to "Server Node Limit" and Server Textpool Size for more information. |
| Connected Nodes | The number of service nodes to which the server has connected a LAT virtual circuit. Refer to "Server Node Limit" more information. |
| Connected Sessions | The total number of sessions that the server has connected. Refer to "Server Session Limit" for more information. |
| % CPU Used | The percentage of processing time that the server has used — calculated every second. This indicates of how busy the server is or has been. |
| % Memory Used | The percentage of the server memory pool that is being used to store information for the node and service database, queued requests, and sessions. |

Table 7 - Server Status Display Fields

| Discarded Nodes | The number of nodes that the server cannot include in its node database because the Server Node Limit has been reached or because there is not enough memory. Refer to "Server Node Limit" and "Server Textpool Size" for more information. | |
|-----------------|--|--|
| Resource Errors | The number of times that the server should not create an internal data structure because it did not have enough memory. Refer to "Server Textpool Size" for more information. | |

Show/Monitor Server Alternate Status

This display shows how well the server's memory is operating under the current load. For each resource listed, the display shows the Current, High, and Maximum values since the server was last booted. It also shows the number of failures (insufficient amount) associated with each resource, and when the last failure occurred.

Table 8 describes the important fields:

| Field | Description |
|----------------|--|
| Free Text Pool | The amount of text pool space used; the number of times an operation was attempted, but for which there was not enough text pool space; and when the last failure occurred. |
| Free Memory | The amount of non-text pool space used; the number of times an operation was attempted, but for which there was not enough non-text pool space; and when the last failure occurred. |
| Packet Buffers | The number of incoming and outgoing packets that are being buffered (stored temporarily) in memory. |

Table 8 - Server Alternate Status Fields

Using TCP/IP Features

Xyplex Access Servers support connections to TCP/IP nodes. They also support several Internet protocols and features. This section describes how to configure a server's Internet-related settings and enable Telnet features. It covers these topics:

- Defining Basic Internet Settings
- Configuring Internet Routes
- IP and IPX Traffic Filtering¹
- IPX RIP and SAP Import/Export Filters
- Configuring Rotary Connections
- Configuring RLOGIN support
- Remote Management Support
- Loading through Internet Protocols
- Configuring the Access Server as a Domain Name Server
- Using IP Reassembly
- Using TCP Resequencing

¹ Although IPX RIP and SAP filtering is not related to TCP/IP, it is included in this section so that all routing protocol filters can be covered in a single section.

Configuring IP Routes

Large networks with many hosts and servers are often divided into smaller, separate networks. These subnetworks, or "subnets," can exist in the same or separate locations. Sites with a small number of devices, which are connected through routers to larger IP networks (e.g., the Internet), can also be divided into subnets.

The Internet protocol supports communication between devices on separate networks and subnets through gateways (or routers). An IP route specifies the preferred router for routing data traffic to a remote network or subnet. The server maintains a table of IP routes, called the "IP route table," in both its operational and permanent databases.



Figure 1. IP Route

Host and Network Routes

There are two types of IP route table entry: host entries and network entries. Each specifies a gateway to use. When the server attempts to communicate with an Internet node, it compares the node's IP address and subnet mask with its own address and mask, to determine whether the node resides on the same network. If it does, the server sends the data traffic directly to the node.

If the node does not reside on the same network, the server searches its IP route table to find a matching host entry. If it finds a match, the server sends the data traffic to the gateway indicated in the table. The gateway forwards the traffic to the destination. If the server does not find a matching host entry, it looks for a matching network entry.

If it still does not find a match, the server sends the traffic to the primary or secondary gateway.

Dynamic Routing

IP routers communicate among themselves, forwarding network traffic to each other and between networks, using routing protocols such as the Routing Information Protocol (RIP). The routers also select the most efficient path to remote networks; this is called "dynamic routing."

As conditions change, the path to a remote network might change. When this happens, the access server is informed through routing messages that the packets it has sent to a particular router were forwarded to a different router on the same network. This ensures that the packets eventually reach the destination. IP routes that the server obtains in this way are called "learned" routes.

NOTE: Xyplex Access Servers "listen" to routing protocol messages when the routed daemon is enabled; however, they do not actively participate in the protocols.

Static Routing

For some networks with multiple routers, dynamic routing might not be enabled or available. At these sites, the access server must select a specific router to insure that packets are forwarded to the right destination. To do this, the host or server manager specifies database entries that map specific destination networks or hosts to specific routers. This is called "static routing." Static IP routes are also called "locally specified IP routes."

The access server can store both dynamic and static IP routes. The software prevents duplicate entries (entries where the destination address and subnet mask match an existing entry).

Define/Set Server IP Route

Use the following commands to define a locally specified (static) IP routes. You can define up to 64 routes. (You can increase the maximum number of routes by adjusting the Server IP Routing Table Size.)

DEFINE/SET SERVER IP ROUTE ip-address [route-spec]

Valid *route-specs* follow:

```
GATEWAY gateway-ip-address
GATEWAY gateway-ip-address FIXED/VARIABLE
GATEWAY gateway-ip-address MASK subnet-mask
GATEWAY gateway-ip-address MASK subnet-mask FIXED/VARIABLE
GATEWAY gateway-ip-address HOST
GATEWAY gateway-ip-address HOST FIXED/VARIABLE
```

If you do not specify the HOST keyword, the server assumes that the entry is a network route. The FIXED keyword specifies that the server must not modify the route table entry based on routing messages that it receives. (This is the default setting.) The VARIABLE keyword specifies that it may modify the entry.

Examples:

| Xyplex>> | define server IP route 192.168.12.1 gateway 192.168.10.1 |
|----------|--|
| Xyplex>> | set server IP route 192.168.12.1 gateway 192.168.10.1 |
| Xyplex>> | define server IP route 192.168.12.101 gateway 192.168.10.1 host |
| Xyplex>> | set server IP route 192.168.12.101 gateway 192.168.10.1 host |
| Xyplex>> | define server IP route 192.168.12.67 |
| | gateway 192.168.12.33 mask 255.255.255.224 |
| Xyplex>> | set server IP route 192.168.12.67 |
| | gateway 192.168.12.33 mask 255.255.255.224 |

Clear/Purge Server IP Route

Use these commands to remove a static IP route from the server's databases:

CLEAR/PURGE SERVER IP ROUTE *entry* CLEAR/PURGE SERVER IP ROUTE ALL

An *entry* refers to the entry number that corresponds to the route in the List/Show/Monitor Server IP Routes display. (See Figure 2.)

Show/List/Monitor Server IP Route

Use these commands to view all currently available IP routes. Figure 2 shows a sample display:

| | Xyplex> | SHOW SERVE | R IP ROUTE AL | L | | | |
|---|----------|------------|---------------|---------------|-------------|------------------|--|
| | | Address | Gateway | Mask | | Last Modified | |
| l | 1 192.10 | 58.10.101 | 192.168.11.1 | 255.255.255.0 | NET/FIXED 2 | 1 Mar 1996 09:22 | |
| L | 2 192.10 | 58.11.101 | 192.168.11.2 | 0.0.0.0 | HOST/VAR 2 | 1 Mar 1996 09:22 | |

Figure 2 - Server IP Routes Display

IP Traffic Filtering

IP traffic filters determine which IP sources and destinations can communicate with each other through the access server's ports. You can set up these filters on the LAN interface or on individual ports. You define filters on a per-port basis when users/clients gain access to the server through a network protocol, such as SLIP or PPP.

The access server applies the filters to IP packets as it *receives* them from the attached LAN or specified port(s).

A traffic filter specifically allows or restricts traffic between two points; for example, between a dial-in client and a network host. Traffic filters also determine which IP protocols the access server may forward, and can allow or restrict communication through specific TCP and UDP ports.

Additionally, IP traffic filters can allow or restrict the forwarding of TCP packets when the packet's SYN bit is set to ON and the ACK bit is set to OFF. This bit pattern indicates that the sender is trying to open a new session with a destination port. By discarding packets with this bit pattern, you prevent remote users from opening sessions with hosts on the local network.

Enabling IP Filtering

By default, IP traffic filtering is disabled. Use this command to enable it, or to disable it later:

```
DEFINE SERVER IP FILTERING [ENABLED] [DISABLED]
```

IP Traffic Filter Criteria

You can specify the following criteria in an IP traffic filter:

- IP protocol type: specific protocol ID number, TCP, UDP, or ALL
- Destination IP address and subnet mask
- Destination port number or range of numbers
- Source port number or range of numbers
- Source IP address and subnet mask
- Whether a TCP packet has its SYN bit ON and its ACK bit OFF

Determining the Most Specific Filter

When an inbound IP packet is neither TCP nor UDP, the server ignores any filters that specify an individual TCP or UDP port, or range of ports. *If it receives a packet that has multiple matching filters, the server applies the most specific filter.* The server uses the following process to determine the most specific filter:

- 1. The server first looks for matching filters that specify *an IP protocol type* (including type ALL). If one or more filters meet this condition, the server ignores filters that do not specify an IP protocol type. If only one matching filter specifies an IP protocol type, the server applies that filter.
- 2. If more than one matching filter specifies an IP protocol type, the server looks for filters that match the *range of destination TCP or UDP ports* (i.e., the range that the TCP or UDP port falls within). If multiple filters specify an equal range of port numbers, the server looks for filters with the lowest beginning port number. If only one matching filter specifies the narrowest range of destination TCP or UDP ports, the server applies that filter.
- 3. If more than one of the remaining filters specify the narrowest destination TCP/UDP port range, the server looks for filters that specify a *TCP SYN value* (ON or OFF). If only one filter specifies a TCP SYN value, the server applies that filter.
- 4. If more than one of the remaining filters specify a TCP SYN value, the server looks for filters that specify the *range of source TCP or UDP ports*. When multiple filters specify an equal range of port numbers, the server looks for filters with the lowest beginning port number. If only one matching filter specifies the narrowest range of source TCP/UDP ports, the server applies that filter.

- 5. If more than one of the remaining filters specify the narrowest range of source TCP or UDP ports, the server looks for matching filters that specify the *destination IP subnet*. If only one filter specifies the largest destination IP subnet mask, the server applies that filter.
- 6. If more than one of the remaining filters specify the largest destination IP subnet mask, the server looks for matching filters that specify the *source IP subnet*. At this point only one filter should remain; the server applies that filter.

Traffic Filter Commands

Use the following commands to define IP traffic filters. Note that the Define/Set Server commands affect packets that the server receives from the attached LAN. Define/Set Port commands affect packets received through individual ports.

DEFINE/SET SERVER IP FILTER criteria instructions DEFINE/SET PORT port-list IP FILTER criteria instructions

Valid criteria follow:

```
PROTOCOL [protocol-id] (0-to-255)
        [TCP]
        [UDP]
        [ALL]
DESTINATION PORT [port-number] (0-to-65535)
                  [port-number - port-number] (0-to-65535 - 0-to-65535)
                  [ALL]
SYN [ON]
        [ALL]
```

```
SOURCE PORT [port-number] (0-to-65535)

[port-number - port-number] (0-to-65535 - 0-to-65535)

[ALL]

DESTINATION [ip-address [MASK subnet-mask]]

[ALL]

SOURCE [ip-address [MASK subnet-mask]]

[ALL]

Valid filter-instructions follow:
```

DISCARD FORWARD

Protocol

The TCP or UDP Protocol ID number.

SYN ON/ALL

SYN ON means that the SYN (synchronization) bit is set to ON and the ACK (acknowledge) bit is set to OFF in the TCP header. SYN ALL represents any value for the SYN and ACK bits.

Example 1

A network manager wants to allow Nodes 105 (192.168.22.105), 106 (192.168.22.106), and 107 (192.168.22.107) to access hosts on the corporate LAN through the server, using a PPP. No other nodes connected to the access server may access these nodes.



Figure 3. IP Traffic Filter Example

The network manager defines these IP traffic filters:

| 1) | Xyplex>> | define port all ip filter destination 192.168.23.144 discard |
|----|----------|--|
| 2) | Xyplex>> | define port all ip filter destination 192.168.23.122 discard |
| 3) | Xyplex>> | define port 2 ip filter source 192.168.22.105 destination 192.168.23.144 forward |

| 4) | Xyplex>> | define port destination | 2 ip filter source 192.168.22.105 192.168.23.122 forward |
|----|----------|----------------------------|---|
| 5) | Xyplex>> | define port destination | 4 ip filter source 192.168.22.106 192.168.23.144 forward |
| 6) | Xyplex>> | define port destination | 4 ip filter source 192.168.22.106 192.168.23.122 forward |
| 7) | Xyplex>> | define port destination | 7 ip filter source 192.168.22.107 192.168.23.144 forward |
| 8) | Xyplex>> | define port destination | 7 ip filter source 192.168.22.107 192.168.23.122 forward |

Because Filters 3 - 8 specify source IP addresses, they are more specific than Filters 1 and 2, which only specify destinations. Therefore, Filters 3 - 8 override Filters 1 and 2.

Example 2

This example builds upon the scenario described in the previous example. Now, the network manager wants to deny Telnet access to the hosts on the corporate LAN. The TCP port number for Telnet is 23. The network manager defines these filters:

```
Xyplex>> define port 2,4,7 ip filter dest port 23 dest
192.168.23.122 discard
Xyplex>> define port 2,4,7 ip filter dest port 23 dest
192.168.23.144 discard
```

Because these filters specify a TCP port number, they are more specific than the source/destination filters defined in Example 1. Therefore, they override the action of the filter defined in Example 1. As a result, the nodes connected to Ports 2, 4, and 7 cannot access the hosts through Telnet, but can still access them through other IP protocols.

Example 3

This example builds upon the scenarios described in the previous examples. Now, the network manager wants to prevent the nodes connected to Ports 2, 4, and 7 from sharing files with the hosts on the corporate LAN through UDP Network File Sharing (NFS). To do this, the network manager prevents UDP broadcasts with this filter:

Xyplex>> define port 2,4,7 ip filter protocol udp discard

Because this filter specifies a protocol, it is more specific than the filters defined in the previous examples. Therefore, it overrides the filters defined in the previous examples.

IPX Traffic Filters

NOTE: Although IPX Traffic Filtering is not a TCP/IP feature, it is described here so that all routing protocol filters can be covered in a single section.

IPX traffic filters determine which IPX sources and destinations may communicate with each other through the access server's ports. A traffic filter specifically allows or restricts traffic between two points; for example, between two networks or between a NetWare client and server.

You configure traffic filters on a server and/or individual port basis. The server applies them to packets as it receives them.

Traffic Filter Criteria

You can specify the following criteria in a traffic filter:

- Destination IPX network and/or Ethernet address
- Source IPX network and/or Ethernet address

Determining the Most Specific Filter

When the server receives an IPX packet that meets the criteria of more than one traffic filter, it applies the *most specific filter*. The server uses the following process to determine which traffic filter is most specific:

- The server looks for filters that specify a matching destination IPX network. If one or more matching filters meet this condition, the server ignores any filters that do not. If only one of the remaining filters specifies a matching destination network, the server applies that filter.
- 2. If more than one filter specifies a matching destination network, the server looks for filters that specify a matching **destination Ethernet address**. If one or more matching filters meet this condition, the server ignores any filters that do not. If only one of the remaining filters specifies a matching destination address, the server applies that filter.
- 3. If more than one of the remaining filters specify a matching destination address or if no filters do the server looks for filters that specify a matching **source IPX network**. If one or more matching filters meet this condition, the server ignores any filters that do not. If only one of the remaining filters specifies a matching source network, the server applies that filter.
- 4. If more than one of the remaining filters specify a matching source network — or if no filters do — the server looks for a filter that specifies a matching **source Ethernet address**. At this point only one filter should remain; the server applies that filter.

Traffic Filter Commands

By default, IPX traffic filtering is **disabled**. Use this command to enable it, or to disable it later:

DEFINE SERVER IPX FILTERING [ENABLED] [DISABLED]

Use these commands to define IPX traffic filters: DEFINE SERVER IPX FILTER destination-criteria [FORWARD] [DISCARD] DEFINE SERVER IPX FILTER source-criteria [FORWARD] [DISCARD] DEFINE SERVER IPX FILTER dest-criteria source-criteria [FORWARD] [DISCARD] DEFINE PORT port-list IPX FILTER destination-criteria [FORWARD] [DISCARD] DEFINE PORT port-list IPX FILTER source-criteria [FORWARD] [DISCARD] DEFINE PORT port-list IPX FILTER dest-criteria source-criteria [FORWARD] [DISCARD] The *destination-criteria* can include: DESTINATION NETWORK [*ipx-network*] [ALL]

DESTINATION NODE [node-address] (e.g., 08008712AB34) [ALL]

The *source-criteria* can include:

```
SOURCE NETWORK [ipx-network]
[ALL]
SOURCE NODE [node-address] (e.g., 08008712ABCD)
[ALL]
```

NOTE: The Show Server IPX RIP Status and Show Server IPX SAP Status displays list IPX *node-addresses*.

Example

A network manager wants to allow users on Ports 2, 4, and 7 to access two file servers on the corporate LAN (Network BBBB). The server users *may not* access any other nodes on the corporate LAN.



Figure 4. IPX Traffic Filter Example

First, the network manager defines a traffic filter that discards all traffic to the corporate LAN by default:

Xyplex>> define port all ipx filter dest network bbbb discard

Next, the network manager defines filters that allow users at Ports 2, 4, and 7 to forward traffic to the two file servers on Network BBBB:

Xyplex>> define port 2,4,7 ipx filter dest node 000001aabbcc forward Xyplex>> define port 2,4,7 ipx filter dest node 000001ddeeff forward

Because these filters are more specific than the previously defined filter, the server applies them, and consequently allows traffic to be forwarded to the two destination addresses.

IPX-RIP Import/Export Filters

By default, when the IPX protocol is enabled, a Xyplex Access Server adds all routes that it learns through RIP to its IPX route table. This process is called *importing*. The server also advertises all routes in its IPX route table to other IPX routers, by default. This process is called *exporting*.

You can define filters that prevent the server from importing or exporting routes. You can define these filters on a server-wide basis or on an individual port basis. Import filter rules specify whether routes learned through RIP are "accepted" or "discarded." Export filter rules specify whether routes in the route table are "advertised" or "hidden." You can apply filters to specific networks or to ranges of networks.

NOTE: If an IPX service advertisement (SAP table entry) is associated with a filtered RIP packet, the filter rule is also applied to the SAP table entry.

When There Are Multiple Matching Filters

When checking its RIP filter database, the server might find more than one matching filter. When this happens, *the server applies the most specific filter*. A filter that specifies an actual network is considered more specific than one that specifies Network ALL.

Defining RIP Filters

By default, IPX filtering is disabled. Use this command to enable it, or to disable it later:

DEFINE SERVER IPX FILTERING [ENABLED] [DISABLED]

IPX-RIP Export Filters

Use the following commands to define IPX-RIP export filters. Note that using the SERVER keyword affects routes that the server learns through the attached LAN. The PORT keyword affects routes that the server learns through a specified port.

```
DEFINE/SET SERVER IPX RIP EXPORT NETWORK [network] [ADVERTISE]
[ALL] [HIDE]
DEFINE/SET PORT port-list IPX RIP EXPORT NETWORK [network] [ADVERTISE]
[ALL] [HIDE]
A network is a hexadecimal value from 1 to FFFFFFE. Use these
commands to remove RIP export filters:
CLEAR/PURGE SERVER IPX RIP EXPORT [ALL]
[NETWORK [network]]
[ALL]
```

[NETWORK [network]] [ALL]

Examples

RIP Import Filters

Use the following commands to define RIP import filters. Note that using the SERVER keyword affects routes that the server learns through the attached LAN. The PORT keyword affects routes that the server learns through a specified port.

DEFINE SERVER IPX RIP IMPORT NETWORK [network] [ACCEPT] [ALL] [DISCARD] DEFINE PORT port-list IPX RIP IMPORT NETWORK [network] [ACCEPT] [ALL] [DISCARD]

A *network* is a hexadecimal value from 1 to FFFFFFE. Use these commands to remove RIP import filters:

CLEAR/PURGE SERVER IPX RIP IMPORT [ALL]
[NETWORK [network]]
[ALL]
CLEAR/PURGE PORT port-list IPX RIP IMPORT [ALL]

[NETWORK [network]]

[ALL]

Examples

Xyplex>> define server ipx rip import network all discard Xyplex>> define port all ipx rip import network all discard Xyplex>> define server ipx rip import network 1234 accept Xyplex>> define port all ipx rip import network 1234 accept

Xyplex>> purge server ipx rip import network all Xyplex>> purge port all ipx rip import all Xyplex>> purge server ipx rip import network 1234 Xyplex>> purge port all ipx rip import network 1234

SAP Import/Export Filters

By default, when the IPX protocol is enabled, a Xyplex Access Server adds all service "Names" and "Types" that it learns through the Service Advertisement Protocol (SAP) to its IPX SAP table. This process is called *importing*. The server also advertises all service Names and Types in its SAP table to other IPX routers, by default. This process is called *exporting*.

You can define filters that prevent the server from importing or exporting service Names and Types. Import filter rules specify whether service Names and Types learned through SAP are "accepted" or "discarded." Export filter rules specify whether service Names and Types are "advertised" or "hidden." You can apply SAP filters to specific networks or to ranges of networks.

NOTE: If a service advertisement (SAP) is associated with a filtered RIP packet, the server applies the filter rule to the SAP also.

SAP Filter Criteria

SAP filters identify services through one or more of these criteria:

- Network the source or destination network
- Type The NetWare service type; e.g., File Server, Printer

The SHOW IPX SAP Display shows the Network and Type information associated with each SAP in the server's database.

When There Are Multiple Matching Filters

When checking its SAP filter database, the server might find multiple matching filters. When this happens, the server uses the following rules to determine which filter to apply:

- 1. Only consider filters that indicate a specific network.
- 2. If multiple matching filters still exist, only consider the filter(s) that indicate a specific Type.
- 3. At this point only one filter remains. The server applies its rule.

Defining SAP Filters

By default, IPX filtering is disabled. Use this command to enable it, or to disable it later:

DEFINE SERVER IPX FILTERING [ENABLED] [DISABLED]

SAP Export Filters

Use the following commands to define SAP export filters. Note that using the SERVER keyword affects services that the server learns through the attached LAN. The PORT keyword affects services that the server learns through a specified port.

DEFINE/SET SERVER IPX SAP EXPORT sap-characteristics [ADVERTISE]
[HIDE]

DEFINE/SET PORT port-list IPX SAP EXPORT sap-characteristics [ADVERTISE] [HIDE]

Use these commands to remove SAP export filters: PURGE/CLEAR SERVER IPX SAP EXPORT [sap-characteristics] [ALL] PURGE/CLEAR PORT port-list IPX SAP EXPORT [sap-characteristics] [ALL]

Valid sap-characteristics can include:

NETWORK [network] [ALL] TYPE [type-value]

[ALL]

| type-value | Description |
|------------|----------------------------|
| 0 | Unknown |
| 1 | User |
| 2 | User Group |
| 3 | Print Queue |
| 4 or 278 | File Server |
| 5 | Job Server |
| 6 | Gateway |
| 7 | Print Server |
| 8 | Archive Queue |
| 9 | Archive Server |
| Α | Job Queue |
| В | Administration |
| 24 | Remote Bridge Server |
| 47 | Advertising Printer Server |
| 107 | Server (internal) |

A network is a hexadecimal value from 0 to FFFFFFF.

Examples

| Xyplex>> | define server ipx sap export network all hide |
|----------|---|
| Xyplex>> | define port all ipx sap export network all hide |
| Xyplex>> | define server ipx sap export network 1234 type 6 advertise |
| Xyplex>> | define port all ipx sap export network 1234 type 6 advertise |
| Xyplex>> | purge server ipx sap export network all |

SAP Import Filters

Use the following commands to define SAP import filters. Note that using the SERVER keyword affects services that the server learns through the attached LAN. The PORT keyword affects services that the server learns through a specified port.

DEFINE SERVER IPX SAP IMPORT sap-characteristics [ACCEPT] [DISCARD]

DEFINE PORT port-list IPX SAP IMPORT sap-characteristics [ACCEPT] [DISCARD]

Use these commands to remove SAP import filters:

PURGE/CLEAR SERVER SAP IMPORT [sap-characteristics]
[ALL]

PURGE/CLEAR PORT port-list SAP IMPORT [sap-characteristics]
[ALL]

Examples

| Xyplex>> | define server ipx sap import network all discard |
|----------|---|
| Xyplex>> | define port all ipx sap import network all discard |
| Xyplex>> | define server ipx sap import network 1234 type 4 accept <allow file="" only="" servers=""></allow> |
| Xyplex>> | <pre>define port all ipx sap import network 1234 type 4 accept <allow file="" only="" servers=""></allow></pre> |
| Xyplex>> | purge server ipx sap import network all |
| Xyplex>> | purge port all ipx sap import network all |

Configuring Rotary Connections

The term "rotary" refers to the assignment of an IP address or domain name to multiple destinations that offer the same type of service. When a user attempts to connect to the IP address or domain name, the server connects him to an available port that has been assigned that address or domain name. (See Figure 5.)

The access server supports two rotary connection types:

- Assigning an IP address to a group of ports on a server
- Assigning a single domain name to several ports or groups of ports, which can be on multiple servers

You can use these methods together or separately. For example, while a given IP address for a group of ports can only be used at a single server, you can assign many IP addresses to the same domain name. Generally, this requires that you have a domain name server that returns multiple IP addresses for a single name. Figure 5 shows both of these applications.

The rotary is transparent to users. A user simply requests a connection to a destination domain name or IP address, and the server sets up the connection with one of the available ports in the rotary group.



Figure 5. Rotary Connections

When a user tries to connect to a rotary that is configured on one or more other Xyplex servers, the servers set up the connection on the least recently used server in the rotary group. When connecting to a rotary through a domain name, the server tries to connect to the least recently tried IP address for that domain.

If the user has Autoconnect enabled, the server tries each available IP address until it makes a connection. Otherwise, the server only attempts to connect to the next IP address associated with the domain name entry.

When a user on a non-Xyplex unit, such as a UNIX host, tries to make a connection to the rotary through a domain name, the unit makes the connection based on its own rules. UNIX implementations vary. Some hosts only attempt to connect to the first IP address associated with the domain name. Others go down the list in order.

Configuring the Rotary

Use the following commands to set up a rotary. By default, the server's IP address is mapped to all ports (Port 0 - Port *n*).

DEFINE/SET SERVER IP ROTARY *ip-address port-list* DEFINE/SET SERVER IP ROTARY *domain-name port-list*

The following sections explain how to set up rotaries for sample applications.

Simple Rotary on a Single Server

Users can connect to this type of rotary through either an IP address or domain name. To connect eight server ports to a host that is not connected to the Ethernet network, use this command:

Xyplex>> define server IP rotary 192.168.11.10 1-8 Xyplex>> define port 1-8 telnet remote 23

The server's address, 192.168.11.10, can only be used at a single server, even if ports at another server physically connect to the same device or offer the same type of service.

Connections to the Rotary through a Domain Name

To enable users to connect to the rotary through a domain name, you must map the domain name to the appropriate IP address in the host name tables at your domain name server (e.g., \etc\hosts).

If you are using a Xyplex server to resolve domain names (map them to IP addresses), add a locally defined domain name to that server's domain name database. For example, to assign the domain name "host.xyplex.com" to a rotary that has the IP address 192.168.11.10, you would use these commands:

Xyplex>> define domain host.xyplex.com 192.168.11.10
Xyplex>> set domain host.xyplex.com 192.168.11.10

Rotary on Multiple Servers

Configuring a rotary that is located on two or more servers is similar to configuring a single-server rotary. You assign an IP address, which is unique among all devices on the network, to the ports on each server in the rotary. You then define a single domain name that maps to *all* of these IP addresses. (When using an access server to resolve domain names, the domain name can map to a maximum of 16 IP addresses.)

Searching for Available IP Rotary Ports

This feature manipulates the chain of sessions so that the disconnected session is put back into its original place and not at the end of the list (if Roundrobin is disabled). This means that when you search for available IP ports the search always begins at the lowest port in the Rotary list.

Use the following command (in privileged mode) to search for the lowest available IP port:

DEFINE SERVER ROTARY ROUNDROBIN [ENABLED/DISABLED]

The default is Roundrobin enabled. With Roundrobin disabled, the search for an available port mapped to an IP Rotary will always begin at the first port in the Rotary list. Use the following command to display which search method is in use:

SHOW SERVER IP ROTARY

This screen displays one of the following search methods:

Round Robin search: ENABLED

or

Round Robin search: DISABLED, Search by first available

Domain Name Storage

To use the Rotary Connection feature, you must store domain names in a database. When the server performs a domain name query (requests information from the domain name server), it stores all answers for a given domain name in its operational database. The software can store multiple addresses for a domain name, in these ways:

- Multiple addresses in a single response from a domain name server.
- Multiple addresses from different domain name servers (responses to a broadcast domain name query) the server saves all answers.
- Multiple addresses can be defined in the server's databases through the Define/Set Domain commands.

The server can store up to 100 domain names. Each domain name is limited to 16 IP address entries.

Clear/Purge Server IP Rotary

Use the following command to remove an existing rotary:

```
CLEAR/PURGE SERVER IP ROTARY [entry]
[ALL]
```

An *entry* corresponds to an entry number that appears in the Show/List/Monitor IP Rotary display. (See Figure 6.)

Show/List/Monitor Server IP Rotary

Use these commands to view all currently available port IP address assignments (but not domain names). Figure 6 shows a sample display:

```
Xyplex> SHOW SERVER IP ROTARY
Internet Address Ports
172.19.245.110 1-8
```

Figure 6. Server IP Rotary Display

Show/List Domain

This display includes an Entry field, and shows multiple entries for a single domain name, when applicable. (See Figure 11.)

Clear/Purge Domain

Use these commands to delete one or all entries for a single domain name.

Configuring RLOGIN Support

The RLOGIN feature enables a user to log onto a host system through a server port, as shown in Figure 7:



Figure 7. Connecting to Host through RLOGIN

The user enters the domain name or IP address of the host system, and a username that the host recognizes. The server passes its IP address to the host, along with the username of the port and the username entered on the RLOGIN command line.

If the user did not enter a username on the RLOGIN command line, the server uses the username of the port. Depending on the RLOGIN implementation at the UNIX host, this might be enough to allow the user to bypass the host's login routine.

Considerations

To set up the RLOGIN feature on the host, you modify certain files. For example, on some UNIX hosts, you include an entry in the /etc/hosts.equiv file and, optionally, each user's .rhosts file. Then, when a user attempts to login to an account — using RLOGIN and a username that matches an entry in the etc/hosts.equiv file — that user is automatically logged on to the host. The user is not prompted for a username and password.

The RLOGIN feature is enabled by default on the access server. You might not want to use the RLOGIN feature with sensitive accounts, however, since anyone who knows the right username can log on to the account. You can disable RLOGIN through this command:

DEFINE SERVER RLOGIN DISABLED

Associated Commands

The access server supports RLOGIN through these commands:

DEFINE SERVER RLOGIN ENABLED/DISABLED

This command specifies whether users can make connections through RLOGIN. The default is ENABLED.

RLOGIN

Log on to a host by specifying the host system and a username.

SHOW/MONITOR SESSION

View information about an RLOGIN session.

SHOW PORT x STATUS

Indicates "RLOGIN" in the Current Service field and "Port 513" in the Current Port field when a port is being used for RLOGIN.

Defining RLOGIN Dedicated Services

NOTES: With dedicated RLOGIN service, you cannot specify a different username for RLOGIN. the only valid username is the port's username.

When you define a port for dedicated service the user will not be able to access the Xyplex prompt when disconnected from the preferred host. When you define a port as preferred service the user will see the prompt when disconnected.

DEFINE PORT port-list RLOGIN DEDICATED SERVICE service-name

Defining RLOGIN Preferred Services

Use this command to enable a preferred service using RLOGIN. Use the SHOW PORT command to display the current preferred service setting for the port

NOTES: With preferred RLOGIN service, you cannot specify a different username for RLOGIN. the only valid username is the port's username.

> When you define a port for dedicated service, the user will not be able to access the Xyplex prompt when disconnected from the preferred host. When you define a port for preferred service the user will see the prompt when disconnected.

Syntax

DEFINE PORT port-list RLOGIN PREFERRED SERVICE service-name
Defining RLOGIN Transparent Mode

Use this feature to enable the access server to complete a ZMODEM transfer using the RLOGIN feature.

DEFINE/SET PORT [*port-number*] RLOGIN TRANSPARENT MODE [ENABLED]

[DISABLED]

NOTE: Within an RLOGIN session, characters are passed raw (without interpretation) and transparently. This allows the ZMODEM transfer to complete.

ZModem Requirements

| Feature | Setting |
|--------------------|---------------------|
| Typeahead | 1024 |
| TCP Window Size | 1024 |
| Telnet CSI ESC | Enabled |
| Telnet NEW LINE FI | LTER LF or Standard |

Network Management

This section provides an overview of the access server's network management features. The software supports network management in these ways:

- Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP) support
- Telnet access to a server's console port

Using SNMP

This section explains how to use SNMP to manage Xyplex Access Servers. It assumes that you plan to use an SNMP-based network management software application, such as Xyplex ControlPoint[™], to manage the server(s). Hereafter, this section refers to your network management application as a Network Operations Center (NOC).

SNMP is an Internet protocol, defined by RFC (Request for Comment) 1157, that specifies how network management information is carried through a network. The access server software implements an SNMP *agent*. The server stores Management Information Base (MIB) data, and makes it available when requested through SNMP.

The software supports standard and Xyplex-proprietary MIB objects. The software agent accepts the GetRequest, GetNextRequest, and the SetRequest functions and supports the following SNMP traps. These are notices that can be sent to an SNMP client, indicating that a specific event has occurred or the condition of a unit has changed.

Xyplex Access Servers can generate the following SNMP traps:

| coldStart | Signifies that the server is booting in a way that indicates that its configuration might have been changed. The access server generates this trap immediately after loading parameters. |
|-----------------------|--|
| authenticationFailure | Signifies that the server is the addressee of an improperly authenticated network protocol message. SNMP community name and client authentication failures cause the server to generate this trap. |

One trap is generated for each occurrence of its defined event. Note that no traps are transmitted if the server has not been assigned an IP address.

Network Operations Center (NOC): A network manager uses SNMP to manage Access Servers A and B Server A Local Network

Figure 8 shows an example of SNMP in an extended network:

Figure 8. Network Management through SNMP

The server stores the following groups of MIB data:

System — Describes the system as a whole.

Interfaces — The network interfaces over which the system can send or receive IP datagrams (messages).

Address Translation — The Address Resolution Protocol (ARP) table, which the server uses to match IP addresses to Ethernet addresses.

IP — The operation of the Internet Protocol.

ICMP — The operation of the Internet Control Message Protocol.

TCP — The operation of the Transmission Control Protocol.

UDP — The operation of the IP User Datagram Protocol.

Obtaining/Importing the Supported MIBs

If you are using the Xyplex ControlPoint software, you do not need to import any MIBs. The ControlPoint software package includes all of the MIBs that you need.

If you are not using ControlPoint, you can use SNMP to manage all of the access server's settings provided that your NOC is capable of compiling proprietary MIBs. The Xyplex-proprietary MIBs are available through the Xyplex World Wide Web (WWW) server: http://www.xyplex.com.

In addition, a MIB kit is available from Xyplex, which contains all standard and Xyplex-proprietary MIBs that Xyplex products support. The kit also includes a text file that lists the MIB groups supported by the access server's SNMP agent, and provides useful information about how the agent handles MIB objects. To obtain the MIB kit, contact your Xyplex sales representative or distributor.

Defining a Trap Client

An access server will not generate any SNMP Trap messages until you define a Trap Client. A Trap Client is a specific NOC to which the access server sends Trap messages. You can define one or more Trap Clients through this command:

DEFINE/SET SERVER IP SNMP TRAP CLIENT [index] ip-address

An *index* value is a number from 1 to 4. The *ip-address* identifies the NOC that should receive the Trap messages.

Example

Xyplex>> define server IP snmp trap client 1 172.18.12.3

Assigning SNMP Security Information (Optional)

By default, a Xyplex Bridge/Router accepts SNMP Get, Get_Next, and Set requests from any NOC. You can restrict SNMP access to the bridge/router by defining SNMP Clients and Communities. A Community refers to one or more NOCs that specify the same Community string in their SNMP messages. A Client is a specific NOC, which you identify through an IP or Ethernet address.

NOTE: Intense use of GET_Next requests may degrade access server performance.

Table 9 shows how Get/Set Client and Community values determine which NOCs can manage an access server.

| Get/Set Client | Get/Set Community | NOCs that Can Issue Get/Set Requests |
|-------------------|----------------------|---|
| None | None | Any |
| None | Defined | Any NOC that knows the Community value |
| Defined | None | NOCs defined as Clients |
| Defined | Defined | NOCs defined as Clients, which know the Community value |

Table 9 - Get/Set Client and Community Settings

Get and Set Processing and Access Server Databases

SNMP GET processing reads the operational database. SNMP SET processing modifies both the operational and permanent databases. If the unit is managed by SNMP, you may want to keep all ports Nonprivileged or Secure. This reduces the possibility of the permanent and operational databases becoming unsynchronized. In the case of tables with a variable number of entries, such as local services or domain names, this is particularly significant.

The port security table and the menu table are accessed by an index number that may or may not point to the same data item in the two databases.

Creating and Deleting Entries in SNMP Tables

Use the following guidelines to create and delete SNMP table entries:

• To create an SNMP entry:

Send an SNMP *set request* with a unique (non existent) objectId, and the table status value set to valid.

The objectId contains the keys needed to create the table entry. No other values are required to create the entry. Any additional values needed are given defaults by the agent.

Any table item that is part of the Key is set read-only to prevent conflicting entries. Most Keys in standard MIBs are read/write.

• To delete an SNMP entry:

Send an SNMP *set request* with the objectId of the table entry you want to delete, and the table status entry set to invalid.

Defining Get and Set SNMP Clients

A Get Client is a specific NOC that is allowed to manage the access server through Get and Get_Next requests. A Set Client is a NOC that may issue Set requests to the access server. You can use the following commands to define up to four of each of these client types:

DEFINE SERVER IP SNMP GET CLIENT [*index*] *ip-address* DEFINE SERVER IP SNMP SET CLIENT [*index*] *ip-address*

An *index* value is a number from 1 to 4. Use the keyword NONE to delete a previously defined Get or Set Client.

NOTE: Be sure to define Get and Set Client entries for your NOC before you define any other Get or Set Clients.

Example

```
Xyplex>> define server IP snmp set client 1
172.18.121.3
```

Defining SNMP Communities

Get and Set Communities provide an additional level of security. If you do not define any Get Clients, the access server will accept Get and Get_Next requests from any NOC whose Get requests include a Community name that matches the server's Get Community. If you do not define a Get Community, the access server will accept Get and Get_Next requests from any NOC.

Similarly, if you do not define any Set Clients, the access server will accept Set requests from any NOC whose requests include a Community name that matches the server's Set Community. If you do not define a Set Community, the access server will accept Set requests from any NOC.

If you define a Trap Community, the access server will include the Trap Community name in the Trap messages that it generates.

Use the following commands to define Get, Set, and Trap Community names:

DEFINE SERVER IP SNMP GET COMMUNITY ["community-name"] [NONE]

DEFINE SERVER IP SNMP SET COMMUNITY ["community-name"]
[NONE]

DEFINE SNMP TRAP COMMUNITY "community-name"

A *community-name* can include up to 23 characters. Do not include spaces. Use the value NONE to delete a previously defined Get or Set Community.

Examples

Xyplex>> define server IP snmp get community none Xyplex>> define server IP snmp set community "xyplex"

Miscellaneous SNMP Settings

This section explains how to define SNMP Contact and Location strings.

Contact

An SNMP contact identifies a person to contact when the access server needs attention. Use this command to define a contact:

DEFINE SERVER IP SNMP CONTACT "contact-string"

The "*contact-string*" can include up to 60 characters; do not include spaces.

Example

Xyplex>> define server IP snmp contact "bobby_jones"

Location

An SNMP Location specifies where the access server is located. Use this command to specify a location:

DEFINE SERVER IP SNMP LOCATION "location-string"

The "*location-string*" can include up to 60 characters; do not include spaces.

Example

Xyplex>> define server IP snmp location "closet_1"

Using Telnet to Access the Console Port

You can connect to the console port (Port 0) of an access server through Telnet. Once connected to Port 0, you have access to the server's command interface, and can issue server commands as though you were directly logged on to the server. Figure 9 shows two Telnet connections:



Figure 9. Telnet Connections to Console Ports

Once you have connected to the console port of a server, you can use Telnet to connect to another server's console port. Using Figure 9 as an example, you can connect from the console port of Server A to the console port of Server B or C.

You can suspend a Telnet session with the console port of one server by hitting the <Break> key, or typing the local switch character, and then open a session with the console port of another server. You can then suspend that Telnet session and resume the original session, or open a session with the console port of a different server.

Telnet Console Command

Use these commands to access the console port (Port 0) of an access server through Telnet:

TELNET CONSOLE *ip-address* TELNET CONSOLE *ip-address:telnet-port-number* TELNET CONSOLE *domain-name* TELNET CONSOLE *domain-name:telnet-port-number*

Use the following command to access the console port from a UNIX host, through Telnet. Note that you do not need to specify 2000 if you have previously issued the command DEFINE PORT 0 TELNET REMOTE 23.

TELNET [*ip-address*] 2000 [*domain-name*]

The following port settings are predefined for the access server's console port. You cannot change the values for these settings:

| Characteristic | Setting |
|---------------------|----------|
| ACCESS | LOCAL |
| AUTOBAUD | DISABLED |
| BREAK | DISABLED |
| CHARACTER SIZE | 8 |
| DEDICATED SERVICE | NONE |
| DIALUP | DISABLED |
| DSRLOGOUT | DISABLED |
| DTRWAIT | DISABLED |
| FLOW CONTROL | XON |
| INPUT FLOW CONTROL | ENABLED |
| INPUT SPEED | 9600 |
| MODEM CONTROL | DISABLED |
| OUTPUT FLOW CONTROL | ENABLED |
| OUTPUT SPEED | 9600 |
| PARITY | NONE |
| SPEED | 9600 |
| | |

Examples:

```
Xyplex> telnet console 192.168.2.30
```

Establish a session between this port and the console port of the Telnet destination whose IP address is 192.168.2.30.

Xyplex> telnet console access1.xyplex.com

Establish a session between this port and the console port of the Telnet destination whose domain name is access1.xyplex.com.

Define/Set Server Console Logout

Use the following command to specify whether the server should immediately disconnect a console port session when a user logs out from the port. This setting is enabled by default.

DEFINE/SET SERVER CONSOLE LOGOUT [ENABLED]
[DISABLED]

Loading through Internet Protocols

The access server supports three Internet protocols for loading software and parameters:

- Bootstrap Protocol (BOOTP)
- Trivial File Transfer Protocol (TFTP) and Directed TFTP (DTFTP)
- Reverse Address Resolution Protocol (RARP)

These network protocols enable the server to obtain load images (software files) and parameter files from UNIX hosts and to use the UNIX hosts as dump servers. Support for these protocols also enables servers to receive load images and parameters, and to dump memory contents, through an IP router.



These capabilities are illustrated in Figure 10.

Figure 10. Loading through Internet Protocols

The server uses BOOTP to find:

- The server's IP address
- The IP address of a node that can serve as a load, dump, or parameter server
- The name of the file to load
- Potential parameter servers

The server uses TFTP to:

- Copy load images and parameter files to the server
- Write parameters to parameter servers
- Dump memory

Loading Images and Parameter Files

Network 9000 Access Server 720 modules and MAXserver 1620 and 1640 Access Servers have three *initialization records*. These records define how and where the server can obtain a load image and parameter file. The ROMs in these servers use Initialization Record 1 to search for a load image and parameter file. If this attempt fails, they use Initialization Record 2. If the second attempt fails they try Initialization Record 3.

By default, these servers look for a load image on the flash card if a card is present in the card slot. Access Server 720 modules can also obtain a parameter file from a flash card. MAXserver 1620/1640 servers attempt to obtain parameters from NonVolatile Storage (NVS), using the NVS protocol by default. If these default protocols are not enabled, or a flash card is not present in the card drive, the ROMs will search the network for a load image and parameter file.

Refer to the manual *Managing Network 9000 Modules and Power Supplies* for more information about initialization records on Access Server 720 modules. Refer to the *Getting Started Guide* for MAXserver 1620 and 1640 Access Servers for more information about the initialization records on these units.

Configuring Load Protocols

Use the Initialization Configuration Menu, which is described in the hardware documentation supplied with your access server, to select one or more of the following load protocols:

- CARD protocol (Access Server 720 modules for load image and parameter file; MAXserver 1620 and 1640 for load image only)
- NVS protocol (MAXserver 1620/1640 Access Servers for parameter file only)
- Xyplex protocol (XMOP)
- Maintenance Operations Protocol (MOP)
- Bootstrap Protocol (BOOTP)
- Reverse Address Resolution Protocol (RARP)
- Directed TFTP (DTFTP)

Directed TFTP

You can designate a specific TFTP load server by using directed TFTP. You configure the related settings through the Initialization Configuration Menu, or through the commands described in "DTFTP Protocol". Refer to the hardware documentation supplied with your server for a description of the Initialization Configuration Menu.

Eliminating TFTP Broadcasts

Servers that are configured to store parameters locally do not broadcast requests for parameter servers through TFTP or any other protocol. Only servers that are configured for remote parameter storage do so.

You can eliminate TFTP broadcasts that occur while the server is running by disabling TFTP, or by disabling all parameter server checks through the Server Parameter Server Check setting.

Alternately, rather than broadcasting a TFTP message and waiting for responses, you can create a static list of parameter servers through the Define/Set Parameter Server command. Each parameter server in the list will be queried, through TFTP, to determine whether a parameter file exists, what version it is, and other related information.

To eliminate TFTP broadcasts during loading, you can configure the server to load through the Xyplex proprietary protocol (XMOP), MOP, or directed TFTP.

Saving Parameters in the Permanent Database

The access server supports the XMOP, MOP, TFTP and Xyplex protocols for parameter saving. The server always attempts to save parameters through XMOP first. If the Server Parameter Server Check setting is enabled, the server also attempts to save parameters through TFTP.

If a parameter server uses the TFTP protocol, the parameters are written into a .prm file. If this operation is successful, the parameters are also written to a .bck (backup) file.

Dump Transmission

When the access server dumps its memory contents, it can use the same protocols as it does for loading, and the process for selecting a protocol is the same.

Define/Set Parameter Server

Use this command to define a parameter server, using either an Ethernet address or an IP address:

DEFINE/SET PARAMETER SERVER name ADDRESS ethernet-address DEFINE/SET PARAMETER SERVER name INTERNET ADDRESS ip-address

Example

Xyplex>> define parameter server unix-host IP address 172.18.1.1

Define/Set Server Parameter Server Check

Use these commands to enable/disable the Parameter Server Check setting, or to specify how the access server locates and updates eligible parameter servers. *This setting is enabled by default*.

```
DEFINE/SET SERVER PARAMETER SERVER CHECK [ENABLED]
[DISABLED]
[PROPRIETARY ENABLED]
[TFTP ENABLED]
[TIMER timer-value]
```

Use the TFTP ENABLED option to instruct the server to use TFTP *only* for parameter serving. The PROPRIETARY ENABLED keyword instructs the server to use Xyplex-proprietary protocols only.

The TIMER setting specifies how often the access server attempts to locate additional usable parameter servers. You can specify a value from 1 - 120 (minutes). The default is 30 (minutes).

Show Server Status Display

This display shows the IP Load and Dump addresses when the server uses the BOOTP/TFTP protocol for loading and dumping.

Using the Server as a Domain Name Server

The access server provides limited domain name server support. Though the server cannot function as a general Domain Name Server for your network, it can resolve domain names (map them to IP addresses) when it is directly asked to do so. To use this feature, you define the access server as a primary or secondary name server for a host or for another server.

Typical applications include:

- Using a server as the primary or secondary domain name server for other access servers in the network.
- Using a server to resolve domain names on a small network that does not use a host as a domain name server.
- Using an access server to resolve domain names through the rotary feature.

Domain Name Resolution

Upon receiving a request to resolve a domain name, the server checks the domain name table in its operational database. The server sends a response (indicating the IP address[es] associated with the domain) for any domain names that appear in its database.

Obtaining/Storing Domain Names

Domain names in the permanent database are entered into the operational database whenever the server boots. You can use the Purge Domain command to remove a domain name from the permanent database.

In addition to the locally defined domain names, which you specify through Define/Set Domain commands, the server can use domain names that it learns from domain name servers in the network. The server enters these domain names *into the operational database only*.

The operational database can hold up to 100 learned and local domain name/IP address combinations. You can assign each domain name up to 16 IP addresses, to form a rotary group. However, if you are using a domain name server, you should not specify more than 99 domain name/IP address combinations, or the server will not be able to learn any domain names.

The server keeps a learned domain name in its operational database until one of the following occurs:

- You remove it with a Clear Domain command.
- The time-to-live period assigned by the domain name server expires. The software limits the time-to-live period to the value specified by the Server IP Domain TTL setting.
- The operational database contains the maximum number of domain names, a user adds a new domain name with a Set Domain command, or the server learns a new domain name from a domain name server. In this case, the server replaces the oldest learned domain name in its operational database with the new name.

Domain Name Time-to-Live (TTL)

Each IP address for a domain name has its own "time-to-live." The first time a user attempts a connection (or a ping) to a domain name, the server requests a translation from the domain name server(s). Once it receives an answer, the server does not request another translation until the time-tolive expires for all entries associated with that domain name. You specify the time-to-live value of domain name responses through this command:

DEFINE/SET SERVER IP DOMAIN TTL time-to-live

You can define a *time-to-live* from 0 - 168 hours.

Example

Xyplex>> define server IP domain ttl 24

Define/Set Domain

Use this command to define a domain name entry:

DEFINE/SET DOMAIN domain-name ip-address

Example

Xyplex>> define domain john.xyplex.com 192.168.1.1

Show/List Domain

Use this command to view the domain names currently stored in the server database. Figure 11 shows a sample display. The server resolves requests *only* for the domain names listed.

| | Internet | | | Domain | 10 | May 1993 | 14:09:51 |
|-------|-----------------|-----|-----|---------------|-----|----------|----------|
| Entry | Address | TTL | SRC | Name | | | |
| 0 | 140 150 100 054 | | - · | | ~~~ | | |
| 2 | 140.179.139.254 | 4 / | Pri | FINANCE.SUN.C | MО | | |
| 1 | 140.179.20.1 | 49 | Pri | MINX.XYPLEX.C | OM | | |
| 3 | 140.179.20.1 | 49 | Pri | XEBRA.XYPLEX. | СОМ | | |
| | | | | | | | |

Figure 11. Show Domain Display

Clear/Purge Domain

Use these commands to delete one or all locally defined domain names:

```
CLEAR/PURGE DOMAIN [domain-name]
[ENTRY entry-number]
[ALL]
```

An *entry-number* refers to an entry number listed in the Show Domain display (see Figure 11).

Using IP Reassembly

Sometimes data packets that are forwarded by a gateway or a router become fragmented (broken into pieces). When this happens, the server can either attempt to reassemble the packet fragments, or it can simply discard them. Packet fragmentation can cause problems, particularly when using network protocols that do not include a re-send mechanism (for example, UDP, which does not guarantee that data is received successfully).

If packet fragmentation is a problem, you can enable the Server Internet IP Reassembly setting, thereby allowing the server to attempt to reassemble fragmented packets. (There is no guarantee that this operation will be successful, however). Use this command:

```
DEFINE/SET SERVER INTERNET IP REASSEMBLY [ENABLED] [DISABLED]
```

IP reassembly uses additional memory, because the server must store all fragments until it can reassemble the complete packet. Therefore, you might need to increase the Server Packet Count setting through this command:

DEFINE SERVER PACKET COUNT packet-buffers

You can define a *packet-buffers* value from 80 to 1088. (*Default = 80.*) If the server has limited memory, or if packet fragmentation is not a frequent problem, you should leave the Server IP Reassembly setting disabled (as it is by default).

Using TCP Resequencing

Sometimes, when a host has a lot of data to send to the access server, it divides the data into many smaller packets. Each packet is transmitted in sequence, along with a sequence number. Occasionally, a packet is delayed during transmission, usually by a node between the host and the access server. This can cause packets to arrive out of sequence.

When a server receives packets out of sequence, it can either discard the data and not acknowledge receiving it, or it can collect the packets and wait until the out-of-sequence packets arrive. It then passes on the data in the proper sequence. This process is called TCP resequencing.

If the server does not acknowledge the data, the host retransmits all the information again.

Use the following command to enable TCP resequencing. *It is disabled by default.*

DEFINE SERVER IP TCP RESEQUENCING [ENABLED] [DISABLED]

TCP resequencing uses additional memory, because the server must collect all packets until the out-of-sequence packets arrive. Therefore, you might need to increase the Server Packet Count setting through this command:

DEFINE SERVER PACKET COUNT packet-buffers

You can define a *packet-buffers* value from 80 to 1088. (The default is 80.) If the server has limited memory (e.g., less than 180 KB after all features are enabled), you should leave the Server IP TCP Resequencing setting disabled (as it is by default).

Setting Up TN3270 Terminals

This section describes the following tasks:

- Enabling the TN3270 Protocol
- Defining a TN3270 Device
- Defining a TN3270 Translation Table
- Alternate Keymaps
- Using Line 25 as a Status Line
- Local Printer Support

Xyplex Access Servers support TN3270, which enables server users to communicate with an IBM host over a LAN, using Telnet. While connected to the IBM host, users can access databases or run host-based applications. The server translates key input from the terminal into an IBM 3270 data stream. By doing so, the server enables the users' terminals to emulate an IBM display station.

The access server software can emulate the IBM 3278 Model 2 and Model 5 display stations. The server sends the 3270 data stream over the LAN to a Telnet Server at the IBM host site. Similarly, the server translates the 3270 data stream from the Telnet Server into data that the users' terminals can understand.

An access server user can have other, non-TN3270 sessions active while a TN3270 session is active.

Translation Tables

The access server supports several device types and provides an U.S. English translation table. However, your site might require different devices and tables. To create a new device or translation table, you make a copy of the information in an existing device or table, rename it, and then modify the information.

When you create a new device or translation table, you use Define commands only. The server saves devices and tables in its permanent database only; not in the operational database.

You must assign a TN3270 device to each port to ensure proper terminal emulation during a TN3270 session. If you do not want the default translation table (USENGLSH), you must also define the translation table.

Enabling the TN3720 Protocol

The TN3270 protocol is disabled by default. To enable it, you must enter a software password or "key." Check with your Xyplex sales representative or distributor if you do not know the TN3270 password. Use this command to enable TN3270:

Xyplex>> define server protocol TN3270 enabled

When you enter this command, the server prompts you for a password. Enter the password (key) to enable the protocol:

TN3270 Password> xxxxxx

The password does not appear on the screen when you type it. After entering the password, reboot the server to activate the protocol.

After enabling the protocol, you must assign TN3270 device types and translation tables to server ports. These steps are described in the following sections.

NOTE: Some TN3270 features, such as color support, require that the server run the enhanced software for multi-MB servers. Servers with less than 2 MB of memory do not support these features. The access server software *Release Notes* explain how to obtain the enhanced software.

Enabling Extended Attributes

Certain TN3270 features, including the screen attributes blinking, reverse video, and underscore, and extended color support, require that you enable the extended attributes feature on individual ports. Use this command to do so:

DEFINE PORT *port-list* TELNET TN3270 XTDATTRS [ENABLED] [DISABLED]

Defining TN3270 Devices

TN3270 device tables contain the following categories of information, which the server uses to emulate IBM 3270 display stations:

TN3278TYPE — The model of TN3270 device that the server emulates during a TN3270 session.

Local Terminal Type — The default terminal types included with the server software are ANSI, VT100, VT220-7, and VT220-8.

Keymap — Contains the escape sequences that the server uses to translate users' keyboard entries into 3270 display station functions.

Screenmap — Contains the escape sequences that the server sends to the users' terminals to control screen functions such as clear the screen, move the cursor, or set the bold attribute. Optionally, you can assign screenmap color modes. The mode you use, if any, depends on the colors that your terminal supports as well as the colors that the IBM host application supports.

Use the commands described in this section to create a new device using information from an existing device, and to then modify the information for the new device. All commands begin with the keywords DEFINE SERVER TN3270 DEVICE.

Xyplex has defined terminal keymaps and screenmaps for the Wsye 50, IBM 3162, IBM 3164, QVT 82, Televideo (905, 910, 925), and VT 330. You can obtain them by contacting Xyplex Customer Support.

Creating a New Device Type

Use the following command to create a new device type, based on an existing device type. You can specify an existing device type, or specify the number of a port where the device has been set up. The server can use that port's device type and keymap to create the new one. The server can maintain up to eight different TN3270 device types.

```
DEFINE SERVER TN3270 DEVICE new-device [CREATE existing-device]
[PORT port-number]
```

Valid existing-device values are ANSI, VT100, VT220-7, and VT220-8

Examples

Xyplex>> define server TN3270 device tv925 create vt100 Xyplex>> define server TN3270 device tv925 port 6

Using the TN3270 Command

To log on to a TN3270 host, a user can enter the TN3270 command, followed by a host name or IP address. The access server then displays a list of the currently defined terminal (device) types. The user selects a device type by entering the corresponding number, and the server attempts to connect to the host using that device type. An example follows:

```
Xyplex> tn3270 172.19.2.101
Select TN3270 Device Type
1. ANSI
2. VT100
3. VT220-7
4. VT220-8
```

NOTE: Whether you use the TN3270 command or the Telnet command to initiate the TN3270 session, three Telnet options must be negotiated successfully between the client and server: TerminalType, Binary, and EOR.

Defining a TN3270 TERMINALTYPE

Use the following command to specify the local terminal type that the server uses during TN3270 emulation:

DEFINE SERVER TN3270 DEVICE device-name TERMINALTYPE "termtype"

The *device-name* can be a device that you have defined, or a device supplied by the server. The "*term-type*" describes the device; it can comprise up to 21 characters.

Example

NOTE: During Telnet negotiations, the "termtype" string is sent from the client to the server as part of the Terminal Type sub-negotiations.

Also, in a separate Terminal Type sub-negotiation, the TN3278 model is transmitted and appears as "IBM-3278-2" or "IBM-3278-5" in the TCP/IP packet. (Refer to "Defining the TN3278TYPE".)

Defining the TN3278TYPE

Use this command to specify the type of IBM display station that the server emulates on the local terminal during a TN3270 session:

DEFINE SERVER TN3270 DEVICE device-name TN3278TYPE model

The server uses the *device-name* that you specify to emulate the display station *model* that you designate: either MODEL2 (24 rows x 80 columns) or MODEL5 (27 rows x 132 columns).

Example

Xyplex>> define server tn3270 device tv925 tn3278type model2

Modifying the Keymap

Use the following command to modify entries in the Keymap portion of the TN3270 device information:

```
DEFINE SERVER TN3270 DEVICE device-name KEYMAP key "escape-seq" "description"
```

The *device-name* specifies the device to which the new keymap escape sequence is to be applied.

The *key* specifies the IBM 3270 display station function to be executed when a user enters the key sequence that you specify through the "*escape-seq*" variable. Table 10 lists possible values for the *key* variable. The "*escape-seq*" is a byte sequence to be mapped to the IBM display station function in the *key* variable. You can specify the characters in two ways: (1) by entering their hexadecimal values, which you can obtain from the Programmer's Reference manual for the terminal, or (2) by manually pressing the keys on the terminal. This variable can include from 0-8 hexadecimal values. Enclose it in quotes.

The "*description*" is a 1 to 5 character string that identifies the escape sequence in various keymap displays, such as the Show Port Keymap and Show Server TN3270 displays. The description also appears in the display that appears when a user presses the SHOWKEYS status key during TN3270 terminal emulation.

Example

NOTE: If the Port Telnet Newline Filtering setting is "None," causing a CR/NULL to terminate lines, you must define the keymap for Enter as "OD OO ". The trailing space after **00** is *required*.

IBM 3270 Display Station Functions for TN3270 Keymap

Keymaps contain the escape sequences from users' terminals that emulate IBM display station functions. Table 10 lists the IBM display station functions that a local key sequence emulates during a TN3270 session:

| AO | Erase Input | PF4 | PF19 |
|-----------------|-------------|------|---------------|
| AYT | Fast Left | PF5 | PF20 |
| Back Tab | Fast Right | PF6 | PF21 |
| Break | Field Mark | PF7 | PF22 |
| CentSign | Flush Input | PF8 | PF23 |
| Cursor Down | Home | PF9 | PF24 |
| Cursor Left | Insert Mode | PF10 | Print |
| Cursor Right | IP | PF11 | Refresh |
| Cursor Up | New Line | PF12 | Reset |
| Clear | PA1 | PF13 | Scroll |
| Cursor Sel | PA2 | PF14 | ShowKeys |
| Delete | PF3 | PF15 | Status ON/OFF |
| Dup (Duplicate) | PF1 | PF16 | Sys-req |
| Enter | PF2 | PF17 | Tab |
| Erase EOF | PF3 | PF18 | Test |
| DevCncl | | | |

Table 10 - IBM Display Station Functions

NOTE: The Abort Output (AO), Are You There (AYT), Break, and Interrupt Process (IP) functions require the enhanced server software. These Telnet commands generate FF F5 (AO), FF F6 (AYT), FF F3 (Break), or FF F4 (IP) in a datastream to the Telnet server on the host. The Telnet server must be able to interpret these functions.

The Scroll Function

To display the complete 3270 model 5 screen, (27 rows x 132 columns) on terminals that can support 27 lines (or 28 for a separate status line), set the Keymap Scroll function to null, as follows:

DEFINE SERVER TN3270 DEVICE device-name KEYMAP SCROLL " "

Device Cancel

The Device Cancel (DevCncl) keymap command enables TN3270 users to cancel a queued print request. The keyboard of a user who executes a local screen print is locked up until the screen print completes. If the print request is queued because the printer is busy, the user might have to wait a long while before keyboard operation is restored. (The status line displays "PrtBusy X" when this happens.) By typing the Device Cancel key sequence, the user can cancel the print request and unlock the keyboard,

DEFINE SERVER TN3270 DEVICE device-name KEYMAP DEVCNCL "escape-sequence" "description"

Modifying the Screenmap

Use this command to modify entries in the Screenmap:

DEFINE SERVER TN3270 DEVICE device-name SCREENMAP map-action

Valid *map-actions* include:

```
action "escape-seq"
MOVECURSOR "escape-seq" [BASE value]
SGR ENABLED/DISABLED
```

The *device-name* specifies the device to which the new escape sequence is applied.

The *action* variable specifies the action associated with the command. Table 11 lists valid *actions*. (Note that when you specify MOVECURSOR as the screenmap action, you can optionally specify an offset value [BASE value] for the row and column positions, which differs from the default value of 1.)

The "*escape-sequence*" is a hexadecimal value that corresponds to the *action* that you specify. Refer to your terminal's Programmer's Reference manual to obtain the value. Enclose the "*escape-sequence*" in quotes.

The BASE *value* specifies the offset for the MOVECURSOR screenmap action. This *value* specifies the row and column position for the cursor. Valid values for this variable are 0-255. The default is 1.

SGR specifies how the server implements the bold, blink, and underscore screen attributes. If you enable this setting, the program uses the Set Graphic Rendition command to support these attributes. If you disable this setting, the program uses ON/OFF escape sequences to support the attributes.

Example

Table 11 - Screenmap Actions

| Action | Description |
|--------------------|---|
| BEEP | Produce a sound beep. |
| BLINKOFF | Set blink mode off. |
| BLINKON | Set blink mode on. |
| BOLDOFF | Set bold intensity off. |
| BOLDON | Set bold intensity on. |
| CHARSET | Set the character set. |
| CLEARSCR | Clear the screen. |
| COL132 | Set 132 column mode. |
| COL80 | Set 80 column mode. |
| COLORBLUE | Set ANSI-standard for blue |
| COLORGREEN | Set ANSI-standard for green |
| COLORPINK | Set ANSI-standard for pink |
| COLORRED | Set ANSI-standard for red |
| COLORTURQUOIS E | Set ANSI-standard for turquoise |
| COLORWHITE | Set ANSI-standard for white |
| COLORYELLOW | Set ANSI-standard for yellow |
| ERASEEOL | Erase from cursor to the end of the line. |
| EXITRESET | Series of commands used to reset the terminal upon disconnecting. The command(s) execute after the Reset 1 - 4 actions. |
| MOVECURSOR | Position the cursor. |
| RESET1 | Series of commands used to reset the terminal (part 1). |
| RESET2 | Series of commands used to reset the terminal (part 2). |

| RESET3 | Series of commands used to reset the terminal (part 3). | |
|---|---|--|
| RESET4 | Series of commands used to reset the terminal (part 4). | |
| NOTE: The Reset 1 - 4 commands execute during TN3270 initialization and upon termination of a session. | | |
| REVERSEOFF | Set reverse video off. | |
| REVERSEON | Set reverse video on. | |
| SGR | Set graphic rendition | |
| STATUS1 | Write to the 25th line (part one). | |
| STATUS2 | Write to 25th line (part two). | |
| UNDERSCOREOFF | Set the underscore off. | |
| UNDERSCOREON | Set the underscore on. | |

The standard escape sequences can include as many as nine hexadecimal values. The STATUS line and RESET strings, however, might require more room. These can consist of several segments, each containing up to fifteen hexadecimal values.

The server provides a set of special hexadecimal values that indicate where to place row and column values and status line data within an escape sequence. Table 12 shows these characters.

| Hex Value | Means |
|-----------|---------------------------------|
| FE | Binary column |
| FC | Binary row |
| FA | Character column |
| F8 | Character row |
| F6 | Status line data in ASCII |
| F4 | Status line data in hexadecimal |

Table 12 - Special Values for Escape Sequences

For example, the escape sequence for the MOVECURSOR action on a VT100 and its hexadecimal value — including the FA character column value — is:

| escape sequence: | ESC [row;column H |
|--------------------|-------------------|
| hexadecimal value: | 1B 5B F8 3B FA 4B |

The STATUSLINE escape sequence for a CIT 224 and its hexadecimal value, including the F4 status line value in hexadecimal, is:

| escape sequence: | esc P); 1 N Q data esc \setminus |
|--------------------|-------------------------------------|
| hexadecimal value: | 1B 50 30 3B 31 51 F4 1B 5C |

Defining Screenmap Color

The Xyplex TN3270 protocol supports two color modes for IBM terminal emulation: basic 4-color mode and extended 7-color mode. The basic 4color mode consists of green, red, blue, and white. The extended 7-color mode includes the four basic colors and pink, yellow, and turquoise. The mode you use depends on the colors that your users' terminals support as well as the colors that the IBM host application supports.

You define a screenmap escape sequence for each color that you plan to use. You must also enable the TELNET TN3270 XTDATTRS setting at each port where you plan to use the extended 7-color mode.

The following command defines color for the TN3270 screenmap. The syntax descriptions show the ANSI-standard escape sequence for each color. Refer to the terminal's documentation if your users' terminals support other escape sequence types.

DEFINE SERVER TN3270 DEVICE device-name SCREENMAP color-value "escape-sequence"
| color-value | Description |
|----------------|--|
| COLORRED | "1B 5B 33 31 6D" ANSI-standard for red |
| COLORGREEN | "1B 5B 33 32 6D" ANSI-standard for green |
| COLORBLUE | "1B 5B 33 34 6D" ANSI-standard for blue |
| COLORYELLOW | "1B 5B 33 33 6D" ANSI-standard for yellow |
| COLORWHITE | "1B 5B 33 37 6D" ANSI-standard for white |
| COLORPINK | "1B 5B 33 35 6D" ANSI-standard for pink |
| COLORTURQUOISE | "1B 5B 33 36 6D" ANSI-standard for turquoise |
| | |

Defining an Exit Reset String

The Exit Reset screenmap command sends a hexadecimal command string of up to nine characters to the terminal when a TN3270 session terminates. These characters are sent after any defined RESET strings have been transmitted to the terminal. This feature is useful if you want to disable a function such as Auto Scroll during a TN3270 session and then enable it after the session ends. To do this, you disable the function (using the appropriate command string) in one of the RESET screenmap commands, and then enable it through the Exit Reset screenmap.

DEFINE SERVER TN3270 DEVICE *device-name* SCREENMAP EXITRESET "*hex-values*"

Assigning a TN3270 Device to a Port

Use the following command to assign a TN3270 device to a port or group of ports. You can assign a device that you have created, or one of the device types that Xyplex supplies.

When you assign a device to a port, the server automatically assigns the USENGLSH language translation table to that port. If you want to assign a different translation table to the port, refer to the section "Assigning a Translation Table to a Port".

```
DEFINE/SET PORT port-list TELNET TN3270 DEVICE [device-name]
[NONE]
```

The value NONE disables the terminal emulation feature at the specified port(s).

Example

Xyplex>> define port 4-16 telnet 3270 device tv925

Assigning a Default Port Number for TN3270 Sessions

This feature lets you assign a default port number for the access server to use when forming a TN3270 session. If you do not specify a default, the access server uses the default port for a Telnet session, which is 23.

```
DEFINE/SET PORT [port-list] TELNET TN3270 DEFAULT PORT [port-number]
```

Assigning Userdata Strings for Telnet Dedicated Services

Userdata string functions provide you with a way to add a userdata string to a Telnet dedicated service. The userdata string is passed to the network partner upon connection.

Adding A Userdata String

Enter the following to define a userdata string for a dedicated port:

define port port-number telnet dedicated [service] [ipaddress/domain name] userdata "userdata_string"

The keyword "telnet" is required. If it is omitted, the user will be unable to enter the "userdata" string.

Deleting a Userdata String

You can keep the service and delete the userdata string, or you can delete both the service and the string:

To keep the service and delete the userdata string:

define port port-number telnet dedicated [service] [ipaddress/domain name] userdata ""

To delete the service and the userdata string:

define port port-number dedicated none

Modifying a Userdata String

To modify a userdata string, you must redefine the service as well.

Using Userdata Strings Characters

The following guidelines apply to the characters within a userdata character string.

- 1. The string, when computed can store up to 16 characters.
- 2. The range is as follows:

- All printable ascii characters.

- Special escaped ascii characters, including:

- \b backspace
- t tab
- n linefeed
- $\fi form feed$
- \v vertical tab

r - carriage return λ - backslash

- 3. All non-printable ascii characters in the form of $\000 -\377$ octal(hex 00 FF).
- 4. The leading backslash (\) is required for the special escaped and octal characters to be interpreted correctly. In fact, if entering an octal, you will receive an error message if you do not use a value in the range of \000 \377.

The above covers the entire ascii chart from 0-255.

Displaying the Userdata String

The userdata string displays underneath the Dedicated Service display on the Show Port screen. The screen displays characters just as you entered them, with the following minor exceptions:

- If an octal equivalent of a printable character or a special escape character is entered, then that printable or special escape character will be displayed.
- If an octal $\377$ (hex FF) is entered, then it will be doubled. (Telnet interprets the FF has an IAC.)
- If spaces (spacebar) are imbedded in the string, they will be interpreted as a hex 20 and sent up to the connection partner. Do not enter spaces within the string unless you want to pass them to the connection partner.

Sample Userdata Strings

The following examples show how userdata stings convert and display.

Example 1

The user enters xyplex\r\n, as the userdata string. The string is displayed as is, and computes down to a total of 8 characters. The r is a carriage return(hex 0D)and the n, a linefeed(hex 0A).

The hex equivalent of the above string 78 79 70 6c 65 78 0d 0a is sent to the connection partner.

NOTE: Keep in mind that all the rules regarding telnet newline still apply. If a \r (carriage return) is part of the entered string, either a null, linefeed, or nothing will be appended to it, depending on the setting of the telnet newline characteristic.

Example 2

A user enters the string \141\142\143\015\012\000. The string is displayed as abc\r\n\000. The string is sent with Telnet as hex 61 62 63 0d 0a 00.

Note that, although 4 keystrokes were entered for 141, only one character , a, was stored and sent.

Other Commands that Affect TN3270 Devices

The following list briefly describes commands that affect TN3270 devices, but which are described elsewhere in the access server document set:

| TN3270 Commands | Description |
|--|--|
| DEFINE/SET PORT TELNET XTDATTRS DISABLED/ENABLED | Specifies whether the ports that you specify support extended screen attributes during a TN3270 session. |
| PURGE SERVER TN3270 DEVICE <i>device-name</i> | Removes the device that you specify from the server database. |
| SHOW/LIST SERVER TN3270 | Displays a list of TN3270 devices and translation tables defined in the server's permanent database. |
| SHOW/LIST SERVER TN3270 DEVICE device-name | Displays the contents of the device table that you specify. |
| DEFINE/SET SERVER TN3270 PORT KEYMAPS DISABLED/ENABLED | Specifies whether individual ports can maintain copies of a Keymap. |
| SHOW/LIST PORT TELNET CHARACTERISTICS | Displays the TN3270 device for the ports that you specify. |
| SET PORT KEYMAP <i>key</i> " <i>escape-seq</i> " " <i>description</i> "/NONE | Assigns an individual copy of a keymap to a port and modifies keymap escape sequences within the keymap. The NONE keyword removes a keymap assignment from a port. The Server TN3270 Port Keymaps setting must be enabled to use this command. |
| SHOW PORT KEYMAP | Displays the contents of an individual copy of a keymap assigned to a port. |
| DEFINE PORT TELNET DEDICATED SERVICE USERDATA | Defines a userdata string for a dedicated port. |

| | An and of record is required before |
|---|---|
| 11N327U EUK | An end of record is required before |
| | binary negotiation when establishing |
| | a TN3270 session. |
| Tn3270 ErrorLock | During a TN3270 session, the |
| | terminal will lock when you press an |
| | incorrect key sequence until you press |
| | the Reset key. |
| Tn3270 Space_Insert | Enables Insert mode on filled fields |
| | using the TN3270 Insert Mode. |
| Tn3270 TypeAhead | Specifies the size of the TN3270 |
| | typeahead buffer (the number of |
| | bytes or characters that can be |
| | temporarily stored pending |
| Tn3270PREFIXKEYMAP | transmission) for sessions at the |
| | port(s) specified in the port list. |
| | Allows for prepending multiple key |
| | sequences to form a Tn3270 key. |
| Tn3270 SCANNER | A specialized TN3270 feature that |
| | allows an OCS scanner to connect to |
| | a Tn3270 session. |
| Telnet Pass 8D | The server will pass to the Telnet |
| | connection partner at 8 bits, even |
| | parity. It will not be converted |
| Tn3270 Space_Insert Tn3270 TypeAhead Tn3270PREFIXKEYMAP Tn3270 SCANNER Telnet Pass 8D | the Reset key. Enables Insert mode on filled fields using the TN3270 Insert Mode. Specifies the size of the TN3270 typeahead buffer (the number of bytes or characters that can be temporarily stored pending transmission) for sessions at the port(s) specified in the port list. Allows for prepending multiple key sequences to form a Tn3270 key. A specialized TN3270 feature that allows an OCS scanner to connect to a Tn3270 session. The server will pass to the Telnet connection partner at 8 bits, even parity. It will not be converted. |

Defining TN3270 Translation Tables

Translation tables contain the information that the server uses to interpret the EBCDIC data from the IBM host and convert it to ASCII data for the terminal, and vice versa. This translation process occurs through sets of tables that include the hexadecimal values for each character in the tables.

When you create a new set of translation tables, you copy an existing one and then enter hexadecimal values for the unique characters in the new tables. Before you begin, make sure that you have the documentation that lists the hexadecimal ASCII and EBCDIC values for the new characters in the table. This includes the *IBM 3270 Information Display System Character Set Reference* and the equivalent reference for the ASCII terminal.

The server includes one set of tables for USENGLSH (American English). You can define up to eight other sets of tables for other languages.

Creating a New Translation Table

To create a new set of translation tables, you first make a copy of a set of existing tables. The first time you do this, the tables that you copy are the Xyplex-supplied USENGLSH tables. (They are the only ones that exist.) Once you create your own translation tables, you can use them as the basis for new tables.

DEFINE SERVER TN3270 TRANSLATIONTABLE *new-table* CREATE existing-table

The server creates a new TN3270 translation table using the *new-table* name that you specify. The name can comprise up to eight characters. Most translation table names reflect the language of the table; e.g., USENGLSH, FRENCH, SPANISH, and GERMAN.

The server bases the new translation table on the *existing-table* that you specify. If this is the first new table you have created, USENGLSH is the value you use for this variable.

Once you copy the existing table and rename it, you can begin changing the values in the new table. To do this, you create entries for data to be sent from your terminal to the IBM host (ASCII to EBCDIC translation) and for data to be sent from the IBM host to your terminal (EBCDIC to ASCII).

Entering New Values Into the Table

DEFINE SERVER TN3270 TRANSLATIONTABLE trans-name table offset value

The *trans-name* specifies the name of the new translation table. (You can only specify the name of a translation table that you have created. You cannot modify the USENGLSH table.)

The two table values you can use are:

| ASCIITOEBCDIC | Apply the new value to outgoing data from the user's terminal to the IBM host. |
|---------------|--|
| EBCDICTOASCII | Apply the new value to incoming data from the IBM host to the user's terminal. |

The *offset* variable specifies the value to be modified. The values 40 through FF apply to EBCDICTOASCII, as shown in Table 13. The values 20 through FF apply to ASCIITOEBCDIC, as shown in Table 14.

The *value* variable specifies the new hexadecimal translation table entry. The values 20 through FF apply to EBCDICTOASCII and the values 40 through FF apply to ASCIITOEBCDIC. (This is the reverse of the offset values.)

| | 0 | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 | 8 | 9 | а | b | С | d | е | f |
|---|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|
| 0 | 20 | 20 | 20 | 20 | 20 | 26 | 2d | 20 | 20 | 20 | 20 | 20 | 7b | 7d | 5c | 30 |
| 1 | 20 | 20 | 20 | 20 | 20 | 20 | 2f | 20 | 61 | 6a | 7e | 20 | 41 | 4a | 20 | 31 |
| 2 | 20 | 20 | 20 | 20 | 20 | 20 | 20 | 20 | 62 | 6b | 73 | 20 | 42 | 4b | 53 | 32 |
| 3 | 20 | 20 | 20 | 20 | 20 | 20 | 20 | 20 | 63 | 6c | 74 | 20 | 43 | 4c | 54 | 33 |
| 4 | 20 | 20 | 20 | 20 | 20 | 20 | 20 | 20 | 64 | 6d | 75 | 20 | 44 | 4d | 55 | 34 |
| 5 | 20 | 20 | 20 | 20 | 20 | 20 | 20 | 20 | 65 | 6e | 76 | 20 | 45 | 4e | 56 | 35 |
| 6 | 20 | 20 | 20 | 20 | 20 | 20 | 20 | 20 | 66 | 6f | 77 | 20 | 46 | 4f | 57 | 36 |
| 7 | 20 | 20 | 20 | 20 | 20 | 20 | 20 | 20 | 67 | 70 | 78 | 20 | 47 | 50 | 58 | 37 |
| 8 | 20 | 20 | 20 | 20 | 20 | 20 | 20 | 20 | 68 | 71 | 79 | 20 | 48 | 51 | 59 | 38 |
| 9 | 20 | 20 | 20 | 20 | 20 | 20 | 20 | 60 | 69 | 72 | 7a | 20 | 49 | 52 | 5a | 39 |
| а | 20 | 20 | 20 | 20 | 5b | 21 | 7c | 3a | 20 | 20 | 20 | 20 | 20 | 20 | 20 | 20 |
| b | 20 | 20 | 20 | 20 | 2e | 24 | 2c | 23 | 20 | 20 | 20 | 20 | 20 | 20 | 20 | 20 |
| с | 20 | 20 | 20 | 20 | 3c | 2a | 25 | 40 | 20 | 20 | 20 | 20 | 20 | 20 | 20 | 20 |
| d | 20 | 20 | 20 | 20 | 28 | 29 | 5f | 27 | 20 | 20 | 20 | 20 | 20 | 20 | 20 | 20 |
| е | 20 | 20 | 20 | 3b | 2b | 3b | 3e | 3d | 20 | 20 | 20 | 20 | 20 | 20 | 20 | 20 |
| f | 20 | 20 | 20 | 2a | 7c | 5e | 3f | 22 | 20 | 20 | 20 | 20 | 20 | 20 | 20 | 20 |

Table 13 - EBCDICTOASCII, USENGLSH Translation Table

| | 0 | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 | 8 | 9 | а | b | С | d | е | f |
|---|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|
| 0 | 00 | 00 | 40 | fO | 7c | d7 | 79 | 97 | 00 | 00 | 00 | 00 | 00 | 00 | 00 | 00 |
| 1 | 00 | 00 | 5a | f1 | c1 | d8 | 81 | 98 | 00 | 00 | 00 | 00 | 00 | 00 | 00 | 00 |
| 2 | 00 | 00 | 7f | f2 | c2 | d9 | 82 | 99 | 00 | 00 | 00 | 00 | 00 | 00 | 00 | 00 |
| 3 | 00 | 00 | 7b | f3 | c3 | e2 | 83 | a2 | 00 | 00 | 00 | 00 | 00 | 00 | 00 | 00 |
| 4 | 00 | 00 | 5b | f4 | c4 | e3 | 84 | a3 | 00 | 00 | 00 | 00 | 00 | 00 | 00 | 00 |
| 5 | 00 | 00 | 6c | f5 | c5 | e4 | 85 | a4 | 00 | 00 | 00 | 00 | 00 | 00 | 00 | 00 |
| 6 | 00 | 00 | 50 | f6 | c6 | e5 | 86 | a5 | 00 | 00 | 00 | 00 | 00 | 00 | 00 | 00 |
| 7 | 00 | 00 | 7d | f7 | c7 | e6 | 87 | a6 | 00 | 00 | 00 | 00 | 00 | 00 | 00 | 00 |
| 8 | 00 | 00 | 4d | f8 | c8 | e7 | 88 | a7 | 00 | 00 | 00 | 00 | 00 | 00 | 00 | 00 |
| 9 | 00 | 00 | 5d | f9 | c9 | e8 | 89 | a8 | 00 | 00 | 00 | 00 | 00 | 00 | 00 | 00 |
| а | 00 | 00 | 5c | 7a | d1 | e9 | 91 | a9 | 00 | 00 | 00 | 00 | 00 | 00 | 00 | 00 |
| b | 00 | 00 | 4e | 5e | d2 | 4a | 92 | c0 | 00 | 00 | 00 | 00 | 00 | 00 | 00 | 00 |
| с | 00 | 00 | 6b | 4c | d3 | e0 | 93 | 6a | 00 | 00 | 00 | 00 | 00 | 00 | 00 | 00 |
| d | 00 | 00 | 60 | 7e | d4 | 5a | 94 | d0 | 00 | 00 | 00 | 00 | 00 | 00 | 00 | 00 |
| е | 00 | 00 | 4b | 6e | d5 | 5f | 95 | a1 | 00 | 00 | 00 | 00 | 00 | 00 | 00 | 00 |
| f | 00 | 00 | 61 | 6f | d6 | 6d | 96 | 00 | 00 | 00 | 00 | 00 | 00 | 00 | 00 | 00 |

Table 14 - ASCIITOEBCDIC, USENGLSH Translation Table

Assigning a Translation Table to a Port

DEFINE/SET PORT *port-list* TELNET TN3270 TRANSLATIONTABLE *trans_name*

The *trans_name* specifies the translation table to be used during a TN3270 session. The value you specify is either USENGLSH (supplied by Xyplex) or a table you have created.

Example

In this example, a network manager creates a new translation table for a Spanish language terminal, and then changes an entry in the table for both directions of the data flow:

Xyplex>> define server TN3270 translationtable spanish create english

This command creates a new translation table called SPANISH based on USENGLSH. The new table is exactly the same as USENGLSH because this command only duplicates the existing table and renames it. You must then add or change each entry individually to create the unique characters for the SPANISH table.

The next commands add the Spanish character a for a terminal that provides multinational characters in ASCII positions 80-ff. The ASCII value for this character is e0; the EBCDIC value is 44.

| Xyplex>> | define server TN3270 translationtable spanish |
|----------|---|
| | asciitoebcdic e0 44 |
| Xyplex>> | define server TN3270 translationtable spanish |
| | ebcdictoascii 44 e0 |

You can change as many translation table entries as necessary for the new language. When you finish customizing the new table, you can assign it to individual ports for use during a TN3270 session, as follows:

Xyplex>> define ports 4-16 telnet TN3270 translationtable spanish

The translation table name Spanish appears in the TN3270 Translation Table field of the Show Port Telnet Characteristics display for Ports 4-16.

Other Commands that Affect Translation Tables

0558

| Command | Function |
|---|---|
| PURGE SERVER TN3270 TRANSLATIONTABLE trans-name | Removes a specified translation table from the server's database. |
| SHOW/LIST SERVER TN3270 TRANSLATIONTABLE <i>trans-name</i> <i>table</i> | Displays the EBCDICTOASCII or ASCIITOEBCDIC portion of a specified translation table. See Figure 13. |
| SHOW/LIST SERVER TN3270 | Displays a list of TN3270 devices and translation tables defined in the permanent database of the server. See Figure 12. |
| SHOW/LIST PORT TELNET CHARACTERISTICS | Displays the translation table for a specified port. |

```
Xyplex>> SHOW SERVER TN3270
TS/720 V6.0S65 Rom 470003 HW 00.02.00 Lat Protocol V5.2 Uptime: 5 02:30:27
Address:08-00-87-02-34-56 Name:X023456 Ethernet:A Number: 0
Port Keymaps : Disabled
Devices : ANSI, VT100, VT220-7, VT220-8, IBM3164
TranslationTables : USENGLSH
```

Figure 12. Server TN3270 Display

| Xyplex> SHOW SERVER TN3270 TRANSL USENGLSH EBCDICTOASCII | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|--|--|----|----|----|----|-----------|----|-----------|-----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|--|
| TS/ | TS/720 V6.0S65 Rom 470003 HW 00.02.00 Lat Protocol V5.2 Uptime: 5 02:45:51 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Add | Address:08-00-87-02-34-56 Name:X023456 Ethernet:A Number: 0 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Tra | TranslationTable Name: USENGLSH Table: EBCDICTOASCII | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | 0x | 1x | 2x | 3x | 4x | 5x | бx | 7x | 8x | 9x | ax | bx | CX | dx | ex | fx | |
| _ | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| x0 | | 20 | 20 | 20 | 20 | 20 | 26 | 2d | 20 | 20 | 20 | 20 | 20 | 7b | 7d | 5c | 30 | |
| x1 | | 20 | 20 | 20 | 20 | 20 | 20 | 2f | 20 | 61 | бa | 7e | 20 | 41 | 4a | 20 | 31 | |
| x2 | | 20 | 20 | 20 | 20 | 20 | 20 | 20 | 20 | 62 | 6b | 73 | 20 | 42 | 4b | 53 | 32 | |
| x3 | | 20 | 20 | 20 | 20 | 20 | 20 | 20 | 20 | 63 | бc | 74 | 20 | 43 | 4c | 54 | 33 | |
| x4 | | 20 | 20 | 20 | 20 | 20 | 20 | 20 | 20 | 64 | 6d | 75 | 20 | 44 | 4d | 55 | 34 | |
| x5 | | 20 | 20 | 20 | 20 | 20 | 20 | 20 | 20 | 65 | бe | 76 | 20 | 45 | 4e | 56 | 35 | |
| хб | | 20 | 20 | 20 | 20 | 20 | 20 | 20 | 20 | 66 | 6f | 77 | 20 | 46 | 4f | 57 | 36 | |
| x7 | Ì | 20 | 20 | 20 | 20 | 20 | 20 | 20 | 20 | 67 | 70 | 78 | 20 | 47 | 50 | 58 | 37 | |
| x8 | İ | 20 | 20 | 20 | 20 | 20 | 20 | 20 | 20 | 68 | 71 | 79 | 20 | 48 | 51 | 59 | 38 | |
| x9 | i | 20 | 20 | 20 | 20 | 20 | 20 | 20 | 60 | 69 | 72 | 7a | 20 | 49 | 52 | 5a | 39 | |
| xa | İ | 20 | 20 | 20 | 20 | 5b | 21 | 7c | 3a | 20 | 20 | 20 | 20 | 20 | 20 | 20 | 20 | |
| xh | ï | 20 | 20 | 20 | 20 | 20 | 24 | 20 | 23 | 20 | 20 | 20 | 20 | 20 | 20 | 20 | 20 | |
| va | 1 | 20 | 20 | 20 | 20 | 30 | 22 | 25 | 40 | 20 | 20 | 20 | 20 | 20 | 20 | 20 | 20 | |
| ~~ | | 20 | 20 | 20 | 20 | 20 | 2a | 20 F E | -1U | 20 | 20 | 20 | 20 | 20 | 20 | 20 | 20 | |
| xα | | 20 | 20 | 20 | 20 | <u>∠8</u> | 29 | DI | 27 | 20 | 20 | 20 | 20 | 20 | 20 | 20 | 20 | |
| xe | | 20 | 20 | 20 | 2a | 2b | 3b | 3e | 3d | 20 | 20 | 20 | 20 | 20 | 20 | 20 | 20 | |
| xf | | 20 | 20 | 20 | 3b | 7c | 5e | 3f | 22 | 20 | 20 | 20 | 20 | 20 | 20 | 20 | 20 | |

Figure 13. Server TN3270 Translationtable Display

Using Alternate Keymaps

Alternate keymaps enable you to define multiple sets of input sequences for users' terminal keyboards — all mapping to the same function. For example, a user can invoke the TN3270 PF1 function through any of these methods:

- The numeric keypad 1, or
- ESC followed by the digit 1, or
- $\langle CTRL \rangle \langle A \rangle$.

You can define up to three alternate keymaps, giving a total of four unique keyboard sequences that can be mapped to a single TN3270 function (the original sequence plus three alternates).

NOTE: The server does not check for errors when you map alternate keymaps to a device. It does so when the user attempts to establish a TN3270 session with the host.

The first two alternate sequences are displayed on the TN3270 Showkeys display, in addition to the regular primary keymap.

Defining the Alternate Keymaps

Alternate keymaps are stored as TN3270 device table entries (as are normal keymaps). The maximum number of TN3270 device table entries is 20. Use this command to create an entry to hold the alternate keymap:

DEFINE SERVER TN3270 DEVICE device-name CREATE EMPTY

When you use this command, the Show Server TN3270 Device Name command does not display nonessential information.

IMPORTANT

Only use the Create Empty option for alternate keymaps. A device table entry that you specify as a port's Telnet TN3270 device name *must not* be created EMPTY.

Use this command to map an alternate keymap to a TN3270 device table entry:

DEFINE SERVER TN3270 DEVICE device-name KEYMAP ALTMAP name

The *device-name* specifies the name of the TN3270 device table entry to which the alternate keymap is being assigned. The *name* identifies the TN3270 device table entry that contains the alternate keymap. Specifying NONE as the *name* disables any alternate keymap for the TN3270 device.

Example

The following commands modify the distributed VT100 device and add two alternate keymaps. As a result, the TN3270 function keys PA1-PA3 can also be invoked by the sequences ESC-1 through ESC-3, and Control/A-1 through Control/A-3.

```
DEFINESERVERTN3270DEVVT100KEYMAPALTMAPTV925DEFINESERVERTN3270DEVTV925CREATEEMPTYDEFINESERVERTN3270DEVTV925KEYMAPPA1"1B31""ESC-1"DEFINESERVERTN3270DEVTV925KEYMAPPA2"1B32""ESC-2"DEFINESERVERTN3270DEVTV925KEYMAPPA3"1B33""ESC-3"DEFINESERVERTN3270DEVTV925KEYMAPALTMAPPT250DEFINESERVERTN3270DEVPT250CREATEEMPTYDEFINESERVERTN3270DEVPT250KEYMAPPA1"0131""CTRA1"DEFINESERVERTN3270DEVPT250KEYMAPPA2"0132""CTRA2"DEFINESERVERTN3270DEVPT250KEYMAPPA3"0133""CTRA3"
```

Associated Displays

The Show Server TN3270 Device command displays the names of alternate keymap devices. The SHOWKEYS display for a TN3270 session displays the descriptions for up to three keymaps; the primary keymap plus two alternate keymaps. Each description is separated by a comma.

Error Codes

The creation of an operational keymap occurs during the opening of a TN3270 session. A list of possible errors follows:

-1000- Cannot use reserved TN3270 device name

- Explanation: The names EMPTY and NONE are reserved names and cannot be used as device names. This error is displayed during command processing, when you define the device name with a reserved name.
- Action: Define a device name other than EMPTY or NONE.
- -1001- TN3270 alternate keymap 'name' does not exist
- Explanation: You have attempted to establish a TN3270 session in which the alternate keymap name does not exist in the list of devices.
- Action: Check the List/Show Server TN3270 display for devices that have been created. Use the command DEFINE SERVER TN3270 DEVICE *name* CREATE EMPTY.

-1002- TN3270 maximum number of alternate keymaps exceeded

Explanation: You have defined more than three alternate keymaps or you have defined an alternate keymap that points back to itself (as shown in the following example).

define server TN3270 dev vt100 keymap altmap vt100c define server TN3270 dev vt100c keymap altmap vt100

Action: View the LIST/SHOW SERVER TN3270 DEVICE name display and check the alternate device name. Then enter the command again using the alternate name for the *name* and check its alternate device name.

> If they are the same, the alternate keymaps are pointing back to each other. If they are not the same, continue using this command until you reach the fourth alternate keymap name. Correct the problem by defining the third alternate keymap as having no alternate map.

- Example:Keymap A points to altmap B/* ok */Keymap B points to altmap C/* ok */Keymap C points to altmap D/* ok */Keymap D points to altmap E/* NOT ok */
- To correct: DEFINE SERVER TN3270 DEVICE D KEYMAP ALTMAP none

-1003- TN3270 maximum keymap size exceeded

- Explanation: More than 500 keys have been mapped into the device's token table. Given the default of 59 tokens plus three alternate maps with 59 keymaps defined, this is an unlikely error.
- Action: Limit the amount of tokens to less than 500.
- -1004- TN3270 could not allocate memory to start session
- Explanation: TN3270_INIT failed allocating (reserving portions of) memory for building a keymap.
- Action: A corrupted keymap might exist or there might be a shortage of memory. Contact Xyplex Customer Support.
- -1005- TN3270 error building key mappings
- Explanation: This error is displayed in conjunction with one of the above errors and indicates that TN3270 has failed to build a keymap for the device, and that the TN3270 session has terminated.
- Action: Refer to the actions for errors 1001-1004.

Using Line 25 as a Status Line

To configure the access server to support the use of the 25th line of a VT330 or VT420 terminal as a status line, follow these steps:

- 1. Change the terminal display.
- 2. Select the 25th line.
- 3. Activate the 25th line.

Change the Terminal Display

Using the terminal's Display Setup menu, enable the "Host Writable Status Display" setting. The terminal's default setting is "No Status Display."

Select the 25th Line

For the TN3270 session to write to the 25th line, you must define hexadecimal values that "select" the 25th line — using any of the four RESET screenmap commands. An example follows:

Xyplex>> define server TN3270 device vt330 screenmap reset3 "1B 5B 32 24 2D"

This command defines the control function that enables the host to select the type of status line to be displayed on line 25. The hex value 32 used in the preceding example denotes "Host Writable Status Line."

116

Activate the 25th Line

To activate the 25th line, use the STATUS1 screenmap command. An example follows:

Xyplex>> define server TN3270 device vt330 screenmap status1 "1b 5b 31 24 7d 1b 5b 3b 48 f6 1b 5b 30 24 7d"

The 15 hexadecimal values in the STATUS1 screenmap denote the following:

- The first five hex values select the active status display as the status line and specify that the terminal sends data to the status line only.
- The next four values position the cursor at the beginning of the status line.
- The F6 is a special value that instructs TN3270 to write the status line data in ASCII. Changing the value to F4 would instruct TN3270 to display the status line in hexadecimal.
- The last five hex values select the active status display as the main display, instructing the terminal to send data to the main (1 24) lines only. (This is basically a reset. If the last five values were not entered, all TN3270 data including the status line would be displayed on the 25th line.)

| Status | Column | Meaning (Action) | | | | | | | |
|----------------|--------|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|
| S | 1 | Subsystem-ready | | | | | | | |
| А | 2 | MyJob value — indicating connection to the host application | | | | | | | |
| X () | 8 | Terminal wait. (Wait for the condition to clear.) | | | | | | | |
| X <*> | 8 | WrongPlace — The entry you attempted is invalid for that position on the screen; for example, entering data into a protected field. (Press the RESET key; move the cursor to the correct position.) | | | | | | | |
| X *NUM | 8 | Numeric-only field. You tried to enter a lowercase alphabet character into a numeric field. (Press the RESET key and correct the data in the field.) | | | | | | | |
| X *> | 8 | You tried to enter too much data into a field on the screen. (Press the RESET key and enter the correct amount of data.) | | | | | | | |
| X ? + | 8 | Input not accepted/understood. (Press the RESET key; check the screen, and try to enter the data again.) | | | | | | | |
| X -S | 8 | Invalid key combination; key is not mapped to a keymap. (Press the RESET key to continue.) | | | | | | | |
| ^ | 8 | Insert status. | | | | | | | |
| X Printing | 8 | Printing in progress. | | | | | | | |
| X PrtBusy | 8 | Printer is busy. | | | | | | | |
| X NoPrinter | 8 | Printer is not attached. (Press RESET to continue.) | | | | | | | |

Status Line Information

Local Printer Support

You can assign two or more local printers for TN3270 screen printing. To enable support for screen printing, you assign the ACCESS PRT3270 characteristic to one or more ports. The TN3270 printer ports must have valid device names.

To assign a port to a specific printer or to any available printer, use this command:

```
DEFINE/SET PORT port-list TELNET TN3270 PRINTERPORT [port-numb]
[ANY]
```

The *port-list* specifies one or more server ports to assign to a printer port for local TN3270 screen printing.

The ANY keyword specifies that the server may use any available port with Access PRT3270 enabled to print the screen.

A *port-number* can be any valid port number with ACCESS PRT3270 enabled and a valid TN3270 device name.

The Show/List/Monitor Ports Telnet Characteristics display includes the TN3270 printer port assignment, or ANY if you have not specified a port.

The following commands set up normal 80-column print screen handling on a server port:

```
DEFINE PORT port-list ACCESS PRT3270
DEFINE PORT port-list TELNET TN3270 DEVICE VT100
DEFINE PORT port-list AUTOBAUD DISABLED
DEFINE PORT port-list SPEED baud-rate
DEFINE PORT port-list PARITY parity
DEFINE PORT port-list CHARACTER SIZE character-size
LOGOUT PORT port-list
```

Setting Up Daemons

Daemons are system processes that run in background mode at hosts, or at network devices such as access servers. Daemons are often used in UNIX environments and TCP/IP networks to exchange information about network activity, or to manage resources such as printers.

Access servers support these environments by supporting a number of standard daemons. Some benefits of this support include:

- Improving the UNIX "look and feel" of the server, making it easier for UNIX users to use the server.
- Enabling the server to take advantage of information that is typically available in a TCP/IP network, and to make this information available for host users, too.

This section describes how to set up the following daemons at the access server:

- **fingerd** Provides a method for exchanging information among hosts about users who are logged on to a server, using the Finger User Information Protocol (RFC 1288).
- **routed** Provides a method for exchanging routing information among gateways or hosts, using the Routing Information Protocol (RFC 1058).
- **rwhod** Provides a method for collecting information about domain names on the network by listening to "rwho" messages and adding currently unknown domain names to the domain name table.

The server supports additional daemons, which are described in other documents. These include:

- **lpd** Provides a method for exchanging print jobs between hosts and managing jobs that are in a print queue, using the protocol defined by RFC 1179. Setup and configuration of this daemon is described in the guide *Configuring Printer Serving Features*.
- **syslogd** Provides a central facility for logging messages about server events. These messages can be logged at the server and/or in a file at a UNIX host.

Xyplex also supplies a host-based daemon, **csportd**, that you use to manage resources at server ports. This daemon provides a generalpurpose tool for making connections to a port and "piping" data to or from that port. Setup and configuration of this daemon is described in *Printers* section of this guide.

Enabling Daemons

Use these commands to enable daemons:

```
Xyplex>> define server daemon fingerd enabled
Xyplex>> define server daemon routed enabled
Xyplex>> define server daemon rwhod enabled
```

In place of the DEFINE SERVER DAEMON ROUTED ENABLED command, you can use:

Xyplex>> define server rip state enabled Xyplex>> define rip state enabled

The server responds with a message similar to:

-705- Change leaves approximately nnnnn bytes free.

NOTE: "Setting Up the Access Server" discusses the amount of memory used by the daemons.

Reboot the server after issuing the command for the change to take effect.

Using the Finger Daemon (fingerd)

The finger daemon (fingerd) provides a method for exchanging information between hosts about users who are logged on to a server, using the Finger User Information Protocol (RFC 1288). The daemon responds to requests made at a host for information about a user.

Once the daemon is enabled, no other user activity is required. The daemon simply makes information about ports and users available when a user at a host makes a finger request.

Typically, hosts allow you to specify either a domain name or an IP address when making finger requests. Some implementations support options such as "verbose." Refer to your host's finger daemon documentation for information about these options.

Some implementations also allow a finger request to be forwarded through a host or server to another host or server. The Xyplex finger implementation does not forward these requests.

Xyplex servers always respond with one of two display types: a standard display and a verbose format display. This is an example of the standard display:

| % finger @172.19 | finger @172.19.197.98 | | | | | | | | |
|------------------|-----------------------|----------|--------|-------|-------|------|-------|-------|--|
| [172.19.197.98] | | | | | | | | | |
| User Name | Port | Idle | Login | | Port | Name | Statu | ıs | |
| Charlie | 8 | 00:01:10 | 12-Jul | 11:27 | PORT_ | _8 | Wait | Input | |

This is an example of the verbose display:

```
xap> finger -1 Charlie@172.19.197.98
[172.19.197.98]
Port 8:: Charlie Login: 12-Jul 1993 11:27 Status: Connected
+Session 1:: UNIXHOST
Session 2:: VMSHOST
```

The following table describes each field in the finger displays:

| Field | Description | | | | | | | | | |
|-----------|---|---|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|
| Username | A user-supplied name; the name given to the port through the Port Username setting; or "(Remote)" for ports with a remote (host-initiated) connection. | | | | | | | | | |
| Port | The access server | The access server port number. | | | | | | | | |
| Idle | The amount of tir | ne that the port has been idle. | | | | | | | | |
| Login | The time when th | The time when the port was logged in. | | | | | | | | |
| Port Name | The name of the port. The default name is PORT_ <i>n</i> , where <i>n</i> is the physical port number. You can assign a different name through the Define/Set Port Name command. | | | | | | | | | |
| Session | The name of the host or server destination of any sessions running at the port. A plus sign (+) indicates that the session is currently active. If a remote connection has been formed with the port, the service is displayed as "Remote Connect." | | | | | | | | | |
| Status | The current status of the port, which can be: | | | | | | | | | |
| | Autobaud | Being "autobauded" (selecting a port speed). | | | | | | | | |
| | Available | The port's Access setting is Remote or Dynamic, and the port is not busy. | | | | | | | | |
| | Check Modem | Verifying that modem signals are being properly asserted. | | | | | | | | |
| | Check Connect | Determining the status (accepted or rejected) of a pending connection. | | | | | | | | |
| | Connected | Currently connected to a LAT service or Telnet destination. | | | | | | | | |

| Connect Wait | Waiting to retry a connection attempt (used when Port Autoconnect is Enabled). |
|-------------------------|--|
| Connecting | Currently attempting to connect to a LAT service or Telnet destination. |
| Dialback Wait | Waiting for the remote modem to answer a dial-back call. |
| Disconnected | A session was disconnected (for example, because it was inactive for too long). |
| Disconnecting | A session is disconnecting from a LAT service or Telnet destination. |
| Executing Cmd | Executing a command from the local command mode. |
| Finding Script | Searching for a script file via TFTP read requests. |
| First Dialback Login | Making a first attempt to locate a dial- back script. |
| Idle | Currently not in use. |
| Loading Script | The port has located a script file and is receiving the file from the script server. |
| Local Mode | Logged on to the server; currently in local command mode. |
| Locked | Disabled through the Lock command. |
| Login | Waiting for the user to enter a login or Kerberos password. |
| Login Wait | Disabled (for 60 seconds) because an incorrect password has been entered, or because a dial-back attempt failed. |
| Logout | Logged out. |
| Password | Waiting for the password required by a password-protected LAT service. |
| PPP | Used for the Point-to-Point Protocol |
| Reset | Reverting to stored configuration. |
| | |

| Retry Connect | Trying to connect to a service that was previously unavailable (used when Port Autoconnect is Enabled). |
|--------------------------|---|
| Running Script | Executing the commands in a script file. |
| Second Dialback Login | Making a second attempt to locate a dial-back script (the port searches the directory path "above" the path specified for this script server). |
| Slip | Used for Serial Link Internet Protocol. |
| Suspended | The user has entered the local-switch character; the session is being suspended. |
| Test Wait | Executing a Test Service command. |
| Test Out | Outputting the results of a Test Service command. |
| Wait Input | The port is at the local prompt (waiting for the user to enter a command). |
| Wait Logout | Waiting for modem control signals to be deasserted. |
| Wait Output | Completing display output before logging out. |
| Wait Queue | A connection request from this port is in a queue. |
| Wait Session | The session is being disconnected. |

Using the Route Daemon (routed)

This daemon provides a method for exchanging routing information among gateways or hosts, using the Routing Information Protocol (RIP), as defined by RFC 1058. The access server uses RIP to learn about IP routes from hosts or gateways.

The server listens for routing messages and updates its routing tables, but does not transmit any routing information to the default primary or secondary gateways or hosts (The server is a "silent" or "passive" router.)

Once the daemon is enabled, no other user activity is required. You can use the Show/Monitor IP Routes command to display the routes that the server has learned, as well as any "static" (user-defined) routes that have been defined. A sample display follows:

Xyplex>> MONITOR SERVER IP ROUTES ALL Address Gateway Mask Last Modified 1 192.168.19.255 172.16.201.7 255.255.255.0 NET/FIXED 21 Mar 1995 09:22 2 192.169.12.21 172.16.201.8 0.0.0.0 HOST/VAR 24 Mar 1995 13:58*

Refer to "Configuring IP Routes" in "Using TCP/IP Features" for more information about IP routes.

The server processes routes that it learns through RIP in the following way:

- The server enters the routes into the routing table as "variable" routes, which can be re-learned. These routes overwrite any previously learned or manually specified variable route to the same destination. "Fixed" routes are not overwritten by learned routes.
- Routes learned through RIP are not saved to the permanent database. They are lost when the server is rebooted.
- Routes learned through RIP expire after five minutes unless the server hears another RIP broadcast message for the same route.

Using the rwho Daemon (rwhod)

This daemon provides a method for collecting information about domain names on the network by listening to "rwho" messages and adding currently unknown domain names to the domain name table.

Once the daemon is enabled, no other user activity is required. You can use the Show/List/Monitor Domain command to display the domain names that the server has learned, or any manually defined domain names. A sample display follows:

| Xyplex> show domain | | | | | | | | |
|---------------------|---------------------|---------|-------|----------------|-------|--------|----------|--|
| Entry | Internet Address | TTL So | ource | Domain Name | 19 Ja | n 1989 | 08:23:58 | |
| 1 | 192.168.119.100 | 100 Pr | ri | UNIXHOST.CO | ОМ | | | |
| 2 | 192.168.119.200 | 24 Se | ec | FINANCESUN | .COM | | | |
| 3 | 192.168.119.240 | Lo | DC | NET5000.COM | М | | | |
| 4 | 192.168.119.242 | Lo | DC | MAX1600.COM | М | | | |
| 5 | 192.168.119.216 | 1438 Wh | 10 | ENGHOST.COM | М | | | |

When the rwhod daemon is enabled, any domain names that have been learned through rwho messages are indicated as having "Who" as the source in the Show/Monitor Domain display. Refer to Using the Server as a Domain Name Server in "Using TCP/IP Features" for more information about IP routes.

When the server receives an rwho message, if the domain name already exists in the domain name table — and its source is either the primary or secondary name server — the entry is overwritten with "Who" as the source and a time-to-live of 1440. If the domain name exists in the table, and its source is "local," the entry is not overwritten.

Using Nested Menus

This section explains how to use the Nested Menu feature. It covers the following topics:

- About the Nested Menu Feature
- Setting Up the Script Servers
- Creating the Nested Menu File
- Configuring the Access Server to Support Nested Menus
- Sample Nested Menu Files

You can enable or require nested menus at specific ports, or through a user's login script. "Using Scripts" explains how to create login scripts. Note that you cannot enable both the Nested Menu feature and the Menu feature on the same port.

Memory Requirements

The access server must have at least 2 MB of installed memory to support the Nested Menu feature. It must also be running appropriate software. The software for Network 9000 720 modules and the MAXserver 1620/1640 support this feature. Refer to the access server *Software Release Notes* for information about software for other server types.

About the Nested Menu Feature

The Nested Menu Feature enables you to create up to 255 menus, in up to 10 levels. Each menu can have up to 20 entries. To enable the Nested Menu feature on the server, you allocate (reserve portions of) memory for the menu file. The amount of memory you allocate determines the number and size of the menus.

You specify one menu as the Top Level Menu at each port where nested menus are enabled or required. The server displays this menu first. You can specify a different top level menu at different ports.

Figure 14 shows a three-level menu structure. The top level menu for Ports 2-6 is Menu 1; for Port 7 it is Menu 3; and for Port 10 it is Menu 8.



Figure 14. Three-Level Menu Structure

Users at Ports 2-6 have access to Menus 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, and 7, beginning at Menu 1. Users at Port 7 have access to Menus 3, 6, and 7, beginning at Menu 3. Users at Port 10 have access to Menu 8 only. The options on Menus 1 and 3 run Xyplex commands or open other menus. The options on menus 2, 4, 5, 6, 7, and 8 run commands only.

Figure 15 shows what Menu 1 might look like:

| Main Menu | | | | | |
|---|--|--|--|--|--|
| 1.Show Commands5.2.Connect Commands6.3.Port Characteristics7.4.Enable Features8. | Set Session Mode Resume a Session Disconnect a Session Help | | | | |
| Up one level: ^U Top of Menu:^T Exit Menus: ^E Repaint:^R Logout^L Enter number of selection or use arrow keys: | | | | | |

Figure 15. Sample Menu

Users can type the characters shown at the bottom of the menu to move up through the menu levels without choosing options, or to exit from the menus if the port is also configured to support the command interface. You define these characters within the menu file. Users can use arrow keys (\uparrow and \downarrow) to move among the entries within a menu.

How the Server Obtains the Menu File

When the server boots, it searches for a predefined script server, which stores the menu file. When it finds the menu file, the server loads it into local memory. If the server cannot find the menu file, it continues to operate normally. It logs an error in the Accounting Log if Verbose accounting is enabled.

How a Port Obtains the Menus

When a user logs on to a port, the server searches the menu file for the top level menu, and displays that menu on the terminal. The user can then choose options from the various menus. Commands within the top level menu determine the sequence of other menus in the file.

If you have not specified a top level menu, or the port cannot find the menu file, the terminal displays an error message. If nested menus are *enabled*, the port reverts to the command interface. If nested menus are *required*, the server logs out the port.

A user can go to the command interface from within a menu if Nested Menus are not required on the port. To do this, the user enters a predefined Exit key within the menu, or chooses a menu option that disables the nested menu feature.

Setting Up Script Servers

 Determine which hosts or access servers will act as script servers. Script servers must run TFTP. Each access server can have a maximum of four script servers. You can use two or more hosts as backup script servers; these can be a combination of script server types.

- 2. Determine where the TFTP process on the UNIX host starts its path search; this is the TFTP Home directory. Refer to the host's TFTP documentation or MAN page.
- 3. Set up a directory to contain the menu file on each script server.

Create a directory to contain the menu file. On some UNIX systems, you can create a top-level directory just for the menu file, rather than using a directory that already contains many files (e.g., /usr, /bin, /tftpboot, or /etc.). Systems running with the TFTP secure option enabled might require you to place the menu file in /tftpboot.

Figure 16 shows how you might set up a directory to contain the menu file on a UNIX host. In the figure, the file n.menu.file contains the nested menu commands. The examples that follow show how to create this directory on a UNIX host and an access server.





UNIX Host:

Create the menus directory using lower-case letters:

% mkdir menus
Access Server (MAXserver 1820):

Use the MAXserver system disk in a DOS-based PC to create the directory:

```
A:> mkdir menus
```

Specify the location of the script server and the pathname of the menu file, using the Define/Set Server Script Server commands; for example:

```
Xyplex>> define server script server 172.18.12.10 " "
```

After creating the menu directory and defining the script server, use a text editor to create the menu file. The next section describes the commands that you use. The section "Sample Nested Menu Files" includes two sample menu files.

Creating the Nested Menu File

Use the nested menu commands to:

- Define menu options
- Create text strings that prompt for input or specify menu titles
- Define keys for moving among the different menus

Table 15 lists the commands for creating nested menus:

| Command | Purpose |
|----------------|---|
| %menu_file | Define the beginning of a menu file. |
| %menu_start | Define the beginning of a menu. |
| %menu_entry n | Define a menu entry. |
| %menu <i>n</i> | Open a menu from within a menu. |
| %menu_wait | Wait for one command to complete, then prompt the user for input before executing the next command. |
| %menu_noprompt | Display the menu without prompting the user after executing a command. |
| %menu_end | Define the end of a menu. |
| %menu_prompt | Define the menu entry prompt. |
| %menu_continue | Define the menu continue prompt. |
| %menu_top | Define menu control characters. |
| %menu_up | |
| %menu_exit | |
| %menu_logout | |
| %menu_repaint | |

Table 15 - The %menu Commands

The following sections describe these commands in detail. Refer to "Sample Nested Menu Files" for examples.

%menu_file

The menu file must begin with <code>%menu_file</code> or the server will not recognize it as a menu file.

%menu_start n title

This command indicates the beginning of a menu and specifies the menu number and title.

The value of *n* is the menu number. Valid values are from 1 through 255. You use a menu number to specify the top level menu on the server port, through the DEFINE/SET PORT NESTED MENU TOP LEVEL *menunumber* command.

The name you specify as the *title* appears at the top of the menu. The title can include up to 16 characters.

%menu_entry n entry-description command-string

This command defines a menu option. The value of *n* is the entry number for the item on the menu. Follow the option number with a delimiting character such as a carriage return, line feed, or form feed.

The text of *entry-description* appears on the menu next to the entry number. The description can include up to 30 characters. Follow the description with a delimiting character such as a carriage return, line feed, or form feed.

The command-string includes one or more Xyplex commands and %menu commands to be executed when the user chooses the entry number. If a port has the DECserver-like Interface (DLI) enabled — as it does by default — the server interprets the commands in the menu file as part of the DLI command set. If the port has the UNIX-like interface (ULI) enabled, the interface interprets the commands in the menu file as part of the ULI command set.

The *command-string* can include up to 132 characters. If you include more than one command, separate the commands with a semi-colon (;). For example, the following command sets the port to Privileged mode, executes a privileged command, and then resets the port to Nonprivileged mode:

set priv; monitor server status; set nopriv

This example opens the ULI from a DLI port to execute the command **alias**, then reopens the DLI:

```
uli;alias;dli
```

You can include a wildcard character in a command to prompt for user input. For example, the command **connect #** instructs the server to prompt the user to enter a network destination.

You can also execute a script file in a menu entry command string. Doing so provides a way of executing a string of commands that exceeds the 132character limit of a menu entry. The format for the script command is:

SCRIPT "pathname/script-name"

%menu n

Opens the menu that you specify with the *n* variable. You can use this command in the *command-string* of the **%menu_entry** command.

%menu_wait

Wait for one command to complete, then prompt the user for input before executing the next command. This command is useful when you specify two or more Show/List/Monitor commands in a menu entry. The interface displays one screen, then waits and prompts for input before displaying another screen. Use the **%menu_continue** command to define this prompt.

%menu_noprompt

Redisplay the menu after executing commands, without prompting the user for input.

%menu_end

Indicates the end of a menu. You can begin another menu after this command appears in the file, or use other menu commands.

%menu_prompt prompt-text

This command specifies a text string that explains how to select a menu option. This prompt appears at the bottom of the menu where the user enters an option number. The prompt text can include up to 132 characters. The default prompt text is "Enter Number of Selection or Use Arrow Keys:"

%menu_continue prompt-text

This command specifies a text string that explains how to redisplay a menu after a Show/Monitor/List command executes. The prompt text can include up to 132 characters. The default text is "Press <RETURN> to continue..."

%menu_top x text-string

This command specifies the menu key character that the user types to open the top level menu. The *text-string*, which can include up to 20 characters, describes the purpose of the character. A typical entry might be **%menu_top T Top of Menu**. The key and the text appear at the bottom of the menu. No default exists for this key.

%menu_up x text-string

This command specifies the menu key character that the user types to open a menu one level up. The *text-string*, which can include up to 20 characters, describes the purpose of the character. A typical entry might be **%menu_up U Up One Level**. The key and the text appear at the bottom of the menu. No default exists for this key.

%menu_exit x text-string

This command specifies the menu key character that the user types to exit from the menu interface. If nested menus are *enabled* at a port, typing this character recalls the command interface. If nested menus are *required* at the port, typing this character logs out the port. The *text-string*, which can include up to 20 characters, describes the purpose of the character. A typical entry might be **%menu_exit E Exit Menus**. The key and the text appear at the bottom of the menu. No default exists for this key.

%menu_logout x text-string

This command specifies the menu key character that the user types to log out of the menu and the server port. The *text-string*, which can include up to 20 characters, describes the purpose of the character. A typical entry might be **%menu_logout Q Logout**. The key and the text appear at the bottom of the menu. No default exists for this key.

%menu_repaint x text-string

This command specifies the menu key character that the user types to refresh the menu screen. The *text-string*, which can include up to 20 characters, describes the purpose of the character. A typical entry might be **%menu_repaint R Refresh**. The key and the text appear at the bottom of the menu. No default exists for this key.

Using Comment Lines in the Menu File

Begin a comment line with an exclamation point (!) and follow it with the comment text. An example follows:

```
%menu_end
!start Menu 3. Menu 3 displays CONNECT commands.
%menu_start 3 Connect Commands
```

The first line specifies the end of a menu. The second line is a comment explaining that the next section of the file defines a new menu, Menu 3. The third line is a menu command that begins Menu 3.

General Guidelines

When you create the menu file, observe these guidelines:

- The first line of every menu file is %menu_file.
- You can define menus in any order within the file.
- Each menu must have a menu number.
- You can define menu entries in any order within a menu.

The menu file requires that each menu entry have a number, subject to these conditions: (1) if the first entry does not have a number, the file assigns a number to each entry in ascending order, even if subsequent entries have numbers. (2) if the first entry has a number, all entries in the menu must have numbers.

The section "Sample Nested Menu Files" shows two sample menu files, which use all %menu commands.

Debugging the Menu File

A syntax error in the menu file prevents the file from executing when a user attempts to log on to the port. If nested menus are *enabled* on the port, the interface displays an error message and opens the command interface. If nested menus are *required* on the port, the interface displays the error message and does not allow the user to log on.

If the Verbose Accounting feature is enabled, the server logs the error and the line number within the menu file where the error occurred. The Show Server Accounting display includes this information.

For example, the following entry appears if an error occurs on line 24 of the file:

12 August 1995 05:30:01 Illegal use of reserved Nested Menu keyword : line # 24

"Using the Accounting Feature" explains how to enable Verbose Accounting.

Configuring the Server to Support Nested Menus

The following sections explain how to configure the server and individual ports to use the Nested Menu feature. Refer to this section after you have created the menu file.

Server Settings

To enable the Nested Menu feature on the server, you must allocate (reserve portions of) memory for the menu file and specify the menu filename. After defining these settings, reboot the server.

Allocate Memory for the Menu File

Determine how much memory you want to allocate for the menu file. You can allocate between 0 and 204,800 bytes. Allocating any memory for the menu file enables the Nested Menu feature on the server; allocating 0 bytes disables it. If you plan to add menus to the file at a later time, you can allocate more space than the current file requires.

To determine the approximate amount of memory the file requires, use the appropriate command on the script server. *On a UNIX host*, you can use the ls -l command; for example:

```
ls -1 n.menu.file
-rwxrwxrwx 1 216 158000 Aug 18 16:00 n.menu.file
```

The display shows that the size of the file is 158,000 bytes. (The file permissions shown here are only an example, not a requirement.)

On a PC, you can use the dir command:

```
B:> dir n.menu.file

nmenufile 08-07-96 7:24p

1 file(s) 158000 bytes
```

The display shows that the file size is 158,000 bytes.

When you determine the size of the menu file, allocate memory on the server through the Define Server Nested Menu Size command; for example:

Xyplex>> define server nested menu size 158000

IMPORTANT

After defining the menu file size, specify the name of the file before you reboot the server. Otherwise, the server cannot determine the name of the menu file on the script server. (Refer to the following section.)

Specify the Name of the Menu File

Use the Define Server Nested Menu Name command to specify the name of the menu file on the script server; for example:

Xyplex>> define server nested menu name "n.menu.file"

Wait until the "Storage State" field on the Monitor Server Parameter Server display goes to "Idle," then reboot the server:

Xyplex>> init delay 0

Port Settings

Three commands specify Nested Menu port settings. The commands that specify the status of nested menus and the top level menu are mandatory. You can optionally enable the Privileged Nested Menu feature.

Specify the Status of the Nested Menus on Ports

You can enable or require Nested Menus in user login scripts or on one or more ports. Refer to "Using Scripts" for information about creating scripts. Use the following command to specify the status of Nested Menus at specified ports. Nested Menus are disabled by default at all ports.

```
DEFINE/SET PORT port-list NESTED MENU [ENABLED] [DISABLED]
```

Example:

Xyplex>> set port 10-15 nested menu enabled

If Nested Menus are enabled at a port, a user can access the command interface from the menu interface. Or, if the server cannot obtain the menu file, the command interface appears on the display when the user logs into the port.

If Nested Menus are required at a port, a user cannot access the command interface. If the server cannot obtain the menu file, the server does not allow the user to log on to the port.

Specify a Top-Level Menu

You must specify a top-level menu at each port where Nested Menus are enabled or required. Otherwise, the server cannot determine which menu in the file to display first. You do not need to specify the same top-level menu for every port. Use the menu number, which you assigned to each menu when you created the menu file, to specify the top-level menu. This example uses menu number 1:

Xyplex>> set port 2-6 nested menu top level 1

Specify Privileged Nested Menus, If Needed

If you enable the Privileged Nested Menu feature, you can include privileged commands on the menu without including the Set Privilege command in the menu file. This feature is disabled by default. Use the following command to enable it:

Xyplex>> set port 2-6 privileged nested menu enabled

NOTE: If you disable the Privileged Nested Menu feature, you also disable the Nested Menu feature on the port. If this happens, you must specify the status of Nested Menus on a port as enabled or required before you can use the feature.

Sample Nested Menu Files

Sample File 1 shows a section of a menu file that defines some of the menus in the 3-level menu structure shown in Figure 14. Sample File 2 shows a complete nested menu file, without comments. These examples use all nested menu commands.

Sample File 1

| %menu_file | Indicates a valid menu file. |
|---|---|
| !Start Menu 1 - Main Menu | Comment line. |
| %menu_start 1 Main Menu | Defines the beginning of menu number 1, and assigns it the title "Main Menu." |
| <pre>%menu_entry 1 <cr> Show Commands <cr> %menu 2</cr></cr></pre> | Defines Menu Entry number 1, and assigns the name "Show Commands" to it. The %menu 2 command instructs the server to display Menu 2 when a user selects this entry. The <cr> specifies a carriage return as the delimiting character after the entry number and the display text.</cr> |
| <pre>%menu_entry 2 <cr> Connect Commands <cr> %menu 3</cr></cr></pre> | Defines Menu Entry 2, and assigns the name "Connect Commands" to it. The %menu 3 command instructs the server to display Menu 3 when the user selects this entry. |
| <pre>%menu_entry 3 <cr> Port Settings <cr> %menu 4</cr></cr></pre> | Defines Menu Entry 3, and assigns the name "Port Settings" to it. The %menu 4 command instructs the server to display Menu 4 when the user selects this entry. |

| %menu_entry 4 <cr> Enable Features <cr> %menu 5</cr></cr> | Defines menu entry 4, and assigns the name "Enable Features" to it. The %menu 5 command instructs the server to display Menu 5 when the user selects this entry. |
|---|--|
| %menu_end | Indicates the end of Menu 1. You can add more options to Menu 1 as long as they appear in the file between the %menu_start 1 command and the %menu_end command. |
| !Start Menu 8 - Standalone Menu | Comment line |
| %menu_start 8 Menu Options | Defines the beginning of Menu number 8, and assigns it the title "Menu Options." |
| <pre>%menu_entry 1 <cr> Change Mode to ANSI <cr> set port type ANSI; %menu_noprompt</cr></cr></pre> | Defines Menu Entry number 1, and assigns the name "Change Mode to ANSI" to it. The command line includes the Xyplex command that changes the port type, and the menu command that redisplays the menu without prompting the user. |
| <pre>%menu_entry 2 <cr> Connect to Hosts <cr> connect #</cr></cr></pre> | Defines Menu Entry number 2, and assigns the name "Connect to Hosts" to it. The wildcard character # means "prompt for a destination when the user selects this entry." |

| <pre>%menu_entry 3 <cr> Port Information <cr> show port characteristics; %menu_wait;show port status</cr></cr></pre> | Defines Menu Entry number 3, and assigns the name "Port Information" to it. The interface runs the SHOW PORT CHARACTERISTICS command when a user selects this entry. After the Port Characteristics display appears, the interface displays the prompt "Press New Line to continue," which is defined later in this menu file. When the user presses the New Line key, the interface runs the SHOW PORT STATUS command. |
|--|---|
| %menu_end | Indicates the end of Menu 8. You can add more options to Menu 8 as long as they appear in the file between the %menu_start 8 commands and the %menu_end command. |
| !Start Menu 2 - Displays | Comment line. |
| <pre>%menu_start 2 Show Commands</pre> | Defines the beginning of Menu number 2, and assigns it the title "Show Commands." The position of Menu 2 after Menu 8 in the menu file does not affect how the server displays them. The server orders the menus correctly. |
| <pre>%menu_entry 1 <cr> Display Domains <cr> show domains</cr></cr></pre> | Defines Menu Entry number 1, and assigns the name "Display Domains" to it. The server executes the SHOW DOMAINS command when the user selects this entry. |
| <pre>%menu_entry 2 <cr> Display Nodes <cr> show nodes</cr></cr></pre> | Defines Menu Entry number 2, and assigns the name "Display Nodes" to it. The server executes the SHOW NODES command when the user selects this entry. |

| %menu_entry 3 <cr> Display Port Status <cr> show port status</cr></cr> | Defines Menu Entry number 3, and assigns the name "Display Port Status" to it. The server executes the SHOW PORT STATUS command when the user selects this entry. |
|--|---|
| %menu_end | Indicates the end of Menu 2. You can add more options to Menu 2 as long as they appear in the file between the %menu_start 2 commands and the %menu_end command. |
| <pre>%menu_prompt Enter an option number or use arrow keys.<cr></cr></pre> | Specifies the menu entry prompt. |
| <pre>%menu_continue Press New Line to continue. <cr></cr></pre> | Specifies the menu continue prompt. |
| %menu_up U Up one level | Specifies U as the character that a user types to display the menu that is up one level from the current menu. |
| %menu_top T Top of menu | Specifies T as the character that a user types to open the top level menu. |
| %menu_logut Q Logout | Specifies Q as the character that a user types to logout of the server port. |
| %menu_repaint R Repaint | Specifies R as the character that a user types to repaint the screen. |
| %menu_exit E Exit Menus | Specifies E as the character that a user types to exit from the menu file and use the command interface. |

Sample File 2

%menu_file !-----_____ ! Level 1 Main Menu 1-----!top menu %menu_start 1 Main Menu ! %menu_entry 1 Telnet session to host: connect#;%menu_noprompt ! %menu_entry 2 Rlogin session to host: rlogin #;%menu_noprompt ! %menu_entry 4 Enable CSLIP set port internet cslip enabled;%menu_noprompt ! %menu_entry 5 PPP Control %menu 9 ! %menu_entry 6 Xremote to XDM Server: xconnect # ! %menu_entry 7 Set Terminal Type set port type # !

```
%menu_entry 8
Resume a session
sho session;%menu_wait;resume #
!
%menu_entry 9
Disconnect a session
disconnect #
!
%menu_entry 10
ABC UNIX Timesharing
c rcs.abc.edu;%menu_noprompt
!
%menu_entry 11
Port Status
%menu 4
!
%menu_entry 12
Set/Show Port Parameters
%menu 5
!
%menu_entry 13
Set/Show Alt Port Parms
%menu 6
!
%menu_entry 14
Set/Show Telnet Parameters
%menu 7
!
%menu_entry 15
Set/Show TN3270 Parameters
%menu 8
!
%menu_entry 17
Server/Network Tools
%menu 2
!
```

```
%menu_entry 18
Server Information
%menu 3
!
%menu_entry 20
Exit Menu to CLI
set port nested menu disabled;%menu_noprompt
!
%menu_end
!
1-----
Т
                    Level 2 Menu 2 Server/Network Tools
1-----
!
%menu_start 2 Tools
%menu_entry 1
Ping
set priv system;ping #;set nopriv
%menu_entry 2
Test Pattern
test
%menu_entry 4
Lock Terminal
lock
%menu_entry 5
Send message to port
broadcast #
%menu_entry 6
Show Server Users
sho users
%menu_entry 20
Help
help
%menu_end
```

! !-----I. Level 2 Menu 3 Server Information 1-----Т %menu_start 3 Server Information %menu_entry 1 Main Parameters show server %menu_entry 2 Current Status show server status %menu_entry 3 Network Statistics show server counters %menu_entry 4 Domain Information set priv system; show domain; set nopriv %menu_entry 5 IP Information show server internet %menu_entry 11 Show Users show users %menu_entry 12 Arp Cache uli;arp -a;dli %menu_entry 13 Summary show server summary %menu_entry 14 Alternate Status show server alternate status %menu_entry 15 Routing Tables show server ip route

```
%menu_entry 20
Help
help
%menu_end
1-----
!
                  Level 2 Menu 4 Port Status
1-----
!
%menu_start 4 Port Status
%menu_entry 1
Show Port Summary
show port summary
%menu_entry 2
counters
show port counters
%menu_entry 3
Status
show port status
%menu_entry 4
Sessions
show sessions
%menu_entry 11
Show Users
show users
%menu_entry 20
Help
help
%menu_end
!
```

152

```
!-----
!
                Level 2 Menu 5 Set/Show Port Parameters
1------
L
%menu_start 5 Port Parameters
%menu_entry 1
Show port Parameters
show port characteristics
%menu_entry 3
Set Terminal Type = Hardcopy
set port type hardcopy;%menu_noprompt
%menu_entry 4
Set Terminal Type = Dumb
set port type soft;%menu_noprompt
%menu_entry 5
Set Terminal Type = VT100
set port type ansi;%menu_noprompt
%menu_entry 6
Set Switch to Command Mode chr
set port local #
%menu entry 13
Set Session Forward Switch chr
set port forward #
%menu_entry 14
Set Session Backwrd Switch chr
set port back #
%menu entry 15
Set char length (7-8)
set port cha #
%menu_entry 16
Set Parity
set port parity #
%menu_entry 20
Help
help
%menu_end
```

```
!
!-----
                Level 2 Menu 6 Set/Show alt Port Param
1------
L
%menu_start 6 Alt Port
%menu_entry 1
Show Alternate parameters
show port alt characteristics
%menu_entry 3
Set Backspace character
set port line editor backspace ^h
%menu_entry 4
Set Delete Beg character
set port line editor delete beginning ^u
%menu_entry 5
Set End of Line character
set port line editor end ^e
%menu_entry 6
Set Previous Line character
set port line editor previous line ^p
%menu_entry 7
Set Quoting character
set port line editor quoting character ^v
%menu_entry 8
Set Cancel character
set port line editor cancel ^z
%menu_entry 13
Set Forwards character
set por line editor forwards ^f
%menu_entry 14
Set Delete Line character
set port line editor delete line ^k
%menu_entry 15
Set Begin Line character
set port line editor beginning ^a
```

```
%menu_entry 16
Set Next Line character
set port line editor next line ^n
%%menu_entry 17
Set Insert Toggle character
set port line editor insert toggle ^w
%menu_entry 18
Set Redisplay character
set port line editor redisplay ^r
%menu_entry 20
Help
help
%menu_end
!
1-----
L
               Level 2 menu 7 Set/Show Telnet Parameters
1------
L.
%menu_start 7 Telnet Parms
%menu_entry 1
Show Telnet Parameters
show port telnet parameters
%menu_entry 3
Set Abort Output character
set port telnet abort output #
%menu_entry 4
Set Attention character
set port telnet attention #
%menu_entry 5
Set Echo Mode
set port telnet echo #
%menu_entry 6
Set Erase Keystroke
set port telnet erase char #
%menu entry 7
Set Erase Line Character
```

set port telnet erase line # %menu_entry 8 Set Terminaltype set port telnet terminaltype # %menu_entry 9 Set TN3270 TranslationTable set port telnet TN3270 trans # %menu_entry 13 Set Newline Filtering set port telnet newline filtering # %menu_entry 14 Set Query character set port telnet query char # %menu_entry 15 Set Remote Port set port telnet remote # %menu_entry 16 Set Synchronize character set port telnet synch # %menu_entry 17 Set Transmit Mode set port telnet transmit # %menu_entry 18 Set Session Mode set port telnet binary session mode # %menu_entry 19 Set TN3270 Device set port telnet TN3270 device # %menu_entry 20 Help help %menu_end !

```
1-----
!
             Level 2 Menu 8 Set/Show TN3270 Parameters
1------
!
%menu_start 8 TN3270
%menu_entry 1
Show Telnet Parameters
show port telnet char
%menu_entry 2
Show keymap
show port keymap
%menu_entry 4
Set TN3270 Device
set port telnet TN3270device #
%menu_entry 5
Set TN3270 TranslationTable
set port telnet tn23170 trans #
%menu_entry 20
Help
help
%menu end
!
1------
I.
             Level 2 menu 9 Set/Show PPP Parameters
1------
L
%menu_start 9 PPP
%menu_entry 1
Show Parameters
show port ppp cha
%menu_entry 2
Show Status
show port ppp status
%menu_entry 3
Show Counters
show port ppp counter
```

%menu_entry 4 Show IP Parameters show port ppp ip cha;%menu_wait;sho port ppp ip counters %menu_entry 6 Set Active Mode set port ppp active enabled;%menu_noprompt %menu_entry 7 Set Default Settings set port ppp defaults enabled;%menu_noprompt %menu_entry 8 Set Active Timer set port ppp timer # %menu_entry 9 Set Configure Limit set port ppp configure limit # #menu_entry 10 Set Failure Limit set port ppp failure limit # %menu_entry 11 Set CharacterMap set port ppp charmap # %menu_entry 12 Set Broadcast Range set port ppp ip broadcast # %menu_entry 13 Set VJ Compression set port ppp ip vj compression # %menu_entry 16 Enable PPP set port ppp enabled %menu_entry 20 Help help %menu_end !

```
!-----
! On the Level - Misc Parameters
!-----
!
%menu_top t Top Menu
%menu_up u Up a Menu Level
%menu_logout x Logout
%menu_repaint r Refresh
%menu_continue
CR to continue...
```

Using Scripts

The Network Command Script feature enables you to create a script file that contains one or more commands, and to store the file on a host computer called a script server. You can configure an access server port to request the script file and execute the commands in it as soon as a user logs on to the port; or, you can allow the user to request the script file.

You use a text editor to create script files on the script server. The script server can be a host system that supports the Trivial File Transfer Protocol (TFTP) or a Xyplex device that can load files over a network.

This section explains how to use the script feature, how to create scripts on a script server, and how to set up the access server to use scripts.

- How the Script Feature Works
- Setting Up the Script Server
- Setting Up the Access Server to Use Scripts
- Sample Scripts

How the Script Feature Works

When a user logs on to an appropriately configured port, the server requests a script file for that user from each available script server. If the script is available at more than one script server, it obtains the file from the first script server that responds. If no script file for a given user is found, the server searches for a generic script file. Upon receiving the complete script file, the access server executes the commands within the file and completes the login sequence. You can configure ports to require a script file in order to complete the login sequence, or to log out the user after a suitable waiting period if a file cannot be found.

If the port is a "dialback" modem port, you can also create a separate dialback script. This script specifies the telephone number to dial when a specific user attempts to log on to the server through a modem. If the access server cannot find a script file for that user, it will not allow the user to log in. If it does find a script file for the user, the server instructs the modem to dial the user back at a designated telephone number. You can use the dialback script together with a login script for dialback ports.

The network command script feature provides great flexibility to users and to the access server manager:

- It allows users to "transport" their port configuration. This is especially useful when configuring a port with special attributes; for example, special TN3270 keyboard mapping.
- Network managers can reboot access servers with a single command, and use system set-up scripts which can include welcome messages from a central location.

- It provides a method of login control and security. For example, you can configure a port to execute the script when a user attempts to log on. If the user enters an incorrect username, the port will not find the script, and consequently will not log on the user.
- The command script feature is particularly useful for controlling connections made through modems, since the software uses the network command script feature to support dialback operations.

Setting Up the Script Server

Follow these steps:

- 1. Determine which UNIX hosts or Xyplex Access Servers are to serve as script servers. Each access server can have up to four script servers. You can use two or more hosts as backup script servers; these can be a combination of dial-back or login script servers.
- 2. Set up directories to contain script files on each script server. For a UNIX-based script server, you must follow the TFTP guidelines in the section "Directory Requirements".
 - a) For each user who needs a custom login or dialback script file, create a directory to contain the files. The directory name must match the name that the user enters when logging on to the port (at the Enter username> prompt). At a script server, all username directories must be located in the same top-level directory. For ease of use, you can create a top-level directory for script files only, rather than using a directory that already contains many files, such as /usr, /bin, /tftpboot, or /etc on a UNIX host.
 - b) If two or more users share a single script, you do not need to create individual directories for them. You can store the script in a common directory. To use a combination of custom and common script files, place custom files in the individual user directories, and place the common file in the top-level directory.

Figure 17 shows how you can set up the directories to contain script files at a UNIX host. In the figure, the user jsmith has a custom login script file. When a user logs in as jsmith, the access server first requests the file /tftpboot/SCRIPTS/jsmith/login from the script server.

If the script server cannot find this file, it searches for the file /tftpboot/SCRIPTS/login.

For users who log in at a port that is configured to use scripts, but for whom no individual directory (such as the /jsmith directory) can be found, the server uses the script file /tftpboot/SCRIPTS/login, after the search for a custom script file has failed. Refer to "Script File Execution and Processing" for more information about this process.



Figure 17. Sample Script Server Directory Structure

The user "gjones" has both a login script file and a dialback script file. The dialback script contains information that tells the modem which telephone number to dial when a user named gjones attempts to log on to the server through a modem. If gjones' modem answers when dialed, the user goes through the login routine, and the login script is also run.

Note that if a user logs in as gjones to a non-dialback port that is configured to use a login script, the script server sends the file /tftpboot/SCRIPTS/gjones/login to be run at the port.

In order for the server to locate a user's custom script file, the port username must match the directory name at the host. Therefore, to use their custom login scripts, users must type the correct username when logging in.

For example, to create a top-level directory named SCRIPTS, and a username directory for a user whose login name is "jsmith", you would type the following commands:

UNIX Host

```
% mkdir SCRIPTS
% cd SCRIPTS
% mkdir jsmith
% cd jsmith
```

MAXserver 1820

Take the MAXserver system disk to a DOS-based personal computer (PC) to create a directory for each user. For example:

```
B:> mkdir SCRIPTS
B:> cd SCRIPTS
B:> mkdir jsmith
B:> cd jsmith
```

For additional users, the directory for each username would be a subdirectory of the SCRIPTS directory.

Create the Script File

At the UNIX host or PC, use a text editor to create the script file. Use the name "login" for script files that run when a user logs on to a port. Use the name "dialback" for script files that contain dialback instructions. At a UNIX host, the filename must consist of all lower-case letters.

Follow the guidelines in the next section when developing a script file. The section "Sample Scripts" shows examples.

Writing the Script

Observe the following rules when writing a script:

- The first line in the script file must begin with **#control_script** on the first column of the line.
- You can use most access server commands in a script. Use the same command syntax that you would enter with the command interface.

Exceptions: You cannot run another script file within a script file ("nested" scripts are not allowed). You cannot specify menu commands within a script file.

- You can include commands that require user input, such as commands that require a password. The access server will prompt the user for the password or other input before continuing. The interface displays the user prompt regardless of the setting of the Port Script Echo characteristic.
- You can set a port to privileged mode in two ways: (1) by including the SET PRIVILEGE command and displaying the privilege password prompt to the user. When the user enters the correct password, the port becomes privileged. (2) by including a line in the form:

set priv privilege-password

The command **set priv** must be in lower case letters; begin on column 1 of the script file; and contain exactly one space between the keywords set and priv. Note that the set priv command and *privileged-password* are not displayed, even if the Port Script Echo setting is enabled.

- Each line of a script file can contain only one command with up to 132 characters. Each command must be on one line.
- You can include a Connect command in a script file. For clarity, Xyplex recommends that you include Connect commands at the end of the script file.
 - NOTE: When using edlin to create a script file for use on an MX-1800/1820 diskette, note that the default end-of-file, or EOF indicator (^Z or A1) causes a syntax error when the script executes. When you write the script file to the diskette, delete the EOF indicator from the file.

The # Character

Within command scripts, the access server recognizes the pound (#) character as a flag for special operations. When the pound character is the first character on a command line, the server attempts to treat the contents of the line as control information, which it must interpret. When the # character is followed by a anything other than a script keyword, it indicates a comment. The server ignores the remainder of the line.

echo

When the word "echo" follows the # character, it indicates that a text message or a blank line is to be displayed to the user. The access server displays all characters after **#echo** when the user executes a script. For example, the *text-string* in the following line appears on the terminal screen when the user executes the script.

#echo text-string

The phrase **#echo** must be in lower case letters. The *text-string* is displayed to the user, even if the Port Script Echo setting is disabled. If the *text-string* consists of one or more spaces, a blank line is displayed to the user.

modem

When the word modem follows the # character in a dialback script, it specifies a modem command that the server must pass on to a modem. The phrase **#modem** must be in lower case letters. All white space following **#modem** is removed before the server passes the text on to the modem.

pause

When the word pause follows the # character, it causes the script to pause its execution for a specified number of seconds. This feature is useful in dialback scripts. The following command line causes the script to pause for five seconds:

#pause 5

privileged

NOTE: Do not abbreviate this keyword in the script.

When the word privileged follows the # character in a dialback script, it allows the access server to execute privileged commands in a script file on a port that does not have Privileged mode set. This keyword is useful when you want to execute privileged commands in a script, but you do not want to include the privileged password in the script. When a script includes this keyword, the access server executes any subsequent privileged commands. When the script execution completes, the port reverts to the privilege level that was enabled prior to the script execution.

Directory Requirements

The script server downloads files to the access server through TFTP. Typically, UNIX systems require that you store all files to be transferred via TFTP in the TFTP "home directory." Most UNIX systems provide a mechanism for specifying the TFTP home directory, or a default home directory. The default TFTP home directory varies from system to system. Follow the configuration instructions for the TFTP daemon (tftpd) in your UNIX system's documentation (e.g., MAN pages), to determine how to locate the TFTP home directory.

For example, on Sun Workstations, the MAN page for tftpd says that the home directory is defined in the /etc/inetd.conf file, and that the factory default home directory is /tftpboot. Therefore, you would check the tftp entry in the /etc/inetd.conf file to see if the system is using the default home directory or a user-specified home directory. Place the script files in the home directory.

Using a Link

To simplify configuration, such as adding users, or to prevent the TFTP home directory from becoming cluttered, you can place script files in a directory other than the TFTP home directory. To do this, create a link from the directory containing the script files to the TFTP home directory, so that the TFTP daemon knows where to locate the files. Give the link suitable file permissions using commands in this form (note that you must be superuser):

```
# cd tftp-home-directory
# ln -s script-directory-path script-directory-name
# chmod 777 script-directory-name
```

For example, on Sun Workstations, using the default TFTP home directory, /tftpboot, and a directory named /SCRIPTS as the top-level directory in which script files are stored, you would use these commands:

```
# cd /tftpboot
# ln -s /SCRIPTS
# chmod 777 /tftpboot
```

TFTP Security Mechanisms

Your UNIX system might have TFTP security mechanisms that limit TFTP to specific directories. For example, SunOS[™] uses a TFTP daemon -s (for secure) option that restricts TFTP access to a specific directory and its subdirectories. Sun Workstations are normally configured with this option enabled. An entry similar to -**s** /**tftpboot** in the tftpd entry appears in the /etc/inetd.conf file. Read the MAN pages for tftp, tftpd, and inetd.conf to determine the directory/security requirements on your UNIX system.
Setting Up the Access Server to Use Scripts

Specify the locations where the access server can request script files, using an IP address or domain name, and the directory locations where the files reside. Also specify which ports use or require a script file for login.

- 1. Make sure that Telnet is enabled, and that you have defined the server's IP address. Also make sure that you have defined the address of the domain name server, if the server accesses the script server through a domain name.
- 2. Define one or more script servers:

```
DEFINE/SET SERVER SCRIPT SERVER [domain-name "directory-path"]
[ip-address "directory-path"]
```

Note that you must define a path even if the script resides in the default directory, /tftpboot. When this is the case, specify the null path, " ".

Examples:

Xyplex>> define server script server host.xyplex.com " "
Xyplex>> define server script server host.xyplex.com
 "scripts"
Xyplex>> define server script server 192.168.19.101
 "scripts"

You can define up to four script servers.

3. Where applicable, specify whether the ports require the access server to download and execute the script in order to complete the login sequence. If the port requires the script at login time, it will not complete the login sequence if the access server cannot find the script.

```
DEFINE/SET PORT [port-list] SCRIPT LOGIN [DISABLED]
[ALL] [ENABLED]
[REQUIRED]
```

Example

Xyplex>> define ports 2-5 script login required

If a port does not require the script, it completes the login sequence even if the access server cannot find the script. It runs a script based on the "username" entered at the port prompt. The following command enables the login feature, but does not require it on Ports 6-8:

Xyplex>> define ports 6-8 script login enabled

If neither of the preceding examples applies, the user can login normally and run the script by issuing the Script command. *This is the default for all ports.*

Define/Set Port Script Echo

Use the following command to specify whether a port displays the commands in the script file as it executes them. This setting is Disabled by default.

DEFINE/SET PORT [port-list] SCRIPT ECHO [ENABLED] [ALL] [DISABLED]

Script, Set Port Script

These commands allow users to specify the name and location of a script file to be run. The Set Port Script command is the same as the Script command. It is typically used with TSM. The "*script-name*" can include up to 64 characters.

```
DEFINE/SET PORT [port-list] SCRIPT "script-name"
[ALL]
SCRIPT "script-name"
```

If the username is defined as permanent, and the script login is enabled, the script that matches the username will always be run.

DEFINE/SET PORT [port-list] USERNAME "string"

Examples

```
Xyplex>> set port 5 script "/usr/login"
Xyplex> script "usr/login"
```

Clear/Purge Server Script Server

These commands remove a UNIX host or Xyplex script server from the access server's databases:

```
CLEAR/PURGE SERVER SCRIPT SERVER [entry]
[ALL]
```

An entry is an entry number in the List/Show/Monitor Server Script Server display. (See Figure 18.)

Show/List/Monitor Server Script Server

These commands show information about the script servers that are available for the unit. Figure 18 shows a sample display:

```
Xyplex> SHOW SERVER SCRIPT SERVER
TS/720 V6.0S65 Rom 470003 HW 00.02.00 Lat Protocol V5.2 Uptime: 5 03:55:21
Address:08-00-87-02-34-56 Name:X023456 Ethernet:A Number: 0
Script Servers:
Entry 1: 192.168.240.183 /
Entry 2: 192.168.248.225 /
```

Figure 18. Server Script Server Display

Script File Execution and Processing

The access server runs a script when a user logs on to a port, or when a user issues the Script command. The following events occur when the server runs the script file:

 The user attempts to log on to a port where the Script Login setting is either Enabled or Required. The user enters a login username when the Enter username> prompt appears.

If the port is configured for dialback, the connection is immediately broken. The server saves the port username — in order to locate the script file and authenticate the user — and also saves the port speed.

- 2. The server makes a request to the TFTP process (e.g., a UNIX TFTP daemon) at each script server, to download a specific script file. The file to be downloaded is determined by the server, as follows:
 - If the script is being run when a user logs on to a server port, the access server requests a script file named **login** from a directory location that is based on two items: (1) the *pathname* specified in the Define/Set Server Script Server command and (2) the username of the port, with blank spaces removed. The Define/Set Server Script Server command designates the top-level directories to be searched. An example follows:

If a user named "John A. Smith" logs on to a port, the server requests the script file /usr/xyplex/JohnA.Smith/login from the script server at address 192.168.11.101.

If the TFTP process does not find the script at the specified location, it searches the directory immediately above the specified one.

- If the script is being run as the result of a user request, the name and location of the script file is supplied by the user in the Script or Set Port Script command. If the user does not specify a script to be run, the server requests the script that would normally be used at port login.
- If the script is being run at a dialback port, the server requests a script file named **dialback**. The directory location at the script server is the same as for a login script.
- If the requested file is found at a script server within 30 seconds, the script server downloads the script file to the server through TFTP.
- If the requested file is not found at any script server within 30 seconds, the action that the server takes depends on the value of the Port Script Login setting and, for dialback ports, the value of the Port Dialback setting.
- If the Port Script Login setting is set to Required, the server logs out the port. If it is set to Enabled, the port is logged on.
- If the Port Dialback setting is set to Enabled, the server logs out the port.
- 3. After the requested script file is found at the script server, the file is completely read into memory by the access server, before it is run.
 - When a script file contains a Connect command, the access server initiates the command, runs the remaining commands within the script, and logs on the port. After script finishes running, the access server completes the Connect command.

• A dialback port passes the dialing information to the modem, which then dials the remote modem. The remote modem has only a limited time in which to respond (based on the Port Dialback Timeout setting). If the remote modem does not respond within this interval, or if the line is busy, the server logs out the port and drops the connection. If the remote modem responds within the required interval, the server begins the normal login sequence.

When the Enter username> prompt appears again, the user must type the same name that he typed originally (in Step 1) or the port is logged out and the connection is dropped. If the port is set up to use or require a login script, the server requests and runs the script.

• You can use Kerberos and other security features to provide additional security.

Sample Scripts

1. This login script temporarily defines a dedicated service. You might set up this script for a user who has only limited experience with the access server. The script automatically sets Privileged mode so that the Define command can run; it then resets the mode to Nonprivileged.

```
#control_script
# This script enforces a dedicated service
#PRIV
DEFINE PORT TELNET DEDICATED SERVICE FINANCESUN
SET NOPRIV
```

2. This login script defines TN3270 settings. It enables a user to "carry" the settings to other ports. The script requires the user to enter the privileged password.

```
#control_script
# Use this script to set up a access server for TN3270.
```

```
# TN3270 protocol must be enabled on the access server.
#
# Set up TN3270 port characteristics.
#PRIV
SET PORT TELNET TN3270 DEVICE VT100
SET SERVER IP PRIMARY GATEWAY ADDRESS 192.168.1.1
SET DOMAIN VMS 192.168.1.101
SET NOPRIV
CONNECT VMS
```

3. This dialback script contains dialing information for a modem:

```
#control_script
# This is a dialback script.
#modem atdt5551978
#pause 3
#modem atdt33
```

4. This login script displays a system welcome message. The script uses the echo feature and a control character in an echo line.

```
#control_script
#echo welcome to Company X <Bel>
#echo
#echo The laser printer is down today.
```

Using the Accounting Feature

This section explains how to use the Accounting feature. It covers the following topics:

- Enabling the accounting feature
- Enabling the syslogd daemon
- Information in the Account Log
- Associated commands

When the Accounting feature is enabled, the access server records information about successful and attempted connections made to or from its ports, as well as information about disconnected sessions. It stores this information in a log file.

The following accounting features require that the access server have at least 2 MB of memory and be running appropriate software:

- syslogd daemon
- Verbose Accounting mode
- Verbose Priority number
- Clear Server Accounting command.

The load images for Network 9000 Access Server 720 modules and MAXserver 1620/1640 access servers support all these features. Refer to the *Access Server Software Release Notes* for information about the appropriate load images for other access server types.

Enabling the Accounting Feature

Complete these steps:

- 1. Log on to an access server port and set privileged mode.
- 2. Specify the maximum number of accounting entries that the access server may store. This enables the accounting feature. For example, the following command specifies a maximum of 1000 accounting entries and enables the accounting feature:

Xyplex>> define server accounting entries 1000

The server displays a message (number 705 or 708) that indicates how many bytes of memory remain after the feature is enabled, or which are needed to enable the feature.

Specifying 0 entries disables the Accounting feature.

3. Reboot the access server. You can either push the Reset button on the front of the access server or enter the following command:

Xyplex>> init delay 0

4. To verify that Accounting is enabled after the access server boots, check the Show Server Characteristics display.

Enabling the syslogd Daemon

You can use the syslogd daemon to log accounting information to a remote UNIX host. The daemon supports both normal and verbose accounting entries.

As the access server logs accounting entries, it sends a message to the UNIX host that you specify in the command line. The syslogd daemon intercepts the message and routes it to one or more destinations, depending on the settings in the /etc/syslog.conf file on the host. For example, the host might display output on a console screen, or write the information to a log file.

To change the status of syslogd, use the Define Server Daemon Syslogd Enabled/Disabled command. The setting is disabled by default. When you enable it, you must specify the IP address of the host where the remote account log is to reside:

Xyplex>> define server daemon syslogd enabled 172.19.24.81

Reboot the access server for the command to take effect. When you disable the daemon, you do not need to specify an IP address.

Defining Two syslogd Hosts on the Access Server

You can now define up to two Syslogd hosts for logging of information. Please note the following whenever you define a Syslog host:

- Host 1 must be defined first
- A unique IP address must be defined for each Syslogd host
- Syslog messages for both hosts must be logged at the same Log Facility
- To delete a Syslogd host, you must first disable Host 2

Use the following command to define the Syslog hosts:

For Host 1, use:

DEFINE SERVER DAEMON SYSLOGD ENABLED HOST1<ip-addresssyslogd-host1>

For Host 2, use:

```
DEFINE SERVER DAEMON SYSLOGD ENABLED HOST2 <ip-address-
of-syslogd-host2>
```

To display Syslogd host, use the following command:

SHOW UNIT

Both Syslogd hosts display if they have been previously defined.

NOTE: If you are upgrading from an earlier revision and already have a Syslogd host defined, then the SHOW UNIT display will now show that host as "Host1" as opposed to "Host."

Information In the Account Log

The access server can store information in two types of account log:

- Default account log
- Verbose account log

The default log is enabled automatically when you enable the accounting feature. You enable verbose accounting through a separate command.

The Default Account Log

The default account log records the following information:

- The port numbers where connections were made or attempted
- The usernames of ports
- The sources of the connections, whether local or remote, and the network protocols that the connections used
- The destinations of the connections
- The time when connections were first made
- The times when connections were terminated
- The reasons why sessions were terminated
- The amount of data received from the connected devices
- The amount of data sent by ports to the connected devices

You can use this information for purposes such as:

- Identifying when and where a connection attempt occurred. This information can help determine if your network has a security problem, such as "hackers" attempting to log in.
- Identifying why the access server is rejecting connections, for troubleshooting purposes.
- Providing a record for "billing" time or services. This use requires a host-based application that can collect and store the accounting information from the server.

The access server can store up to 1000 session accounting entries. When the account log reaches its maximum size, the server discards the oldest entry each time it logs a new one. Depending on the number of entries in the log file, the accounting feature can use up to 210 KB of memory — as it does in a log file containing 1000 entries.

Memory Considerations

Before you enable this feature, be sure that the access server has adequate memory to support the accounting log. Some access servers have limited memory available. Enabling the feature on these servers limits the number of other features that you can use. Similarly, enabling other features can affect the amount of memory available for the Accounting feature.

Sample Default Account Log

When the Accounting feature is enabled, the server stores one accounting entry for each connection that is attempted — whether successful or not and for each time a session is disconnected. Figure 19 shows an example of an accounting log displayed in 132 column mode:

| ENTRY | ADDRESS | PORT USERNAME | TYPE | DESTINATION | CONNECT TIME | DISCONNECT 7 | TIME BY | TES IN BY | TES OUT |
|-------|-------------------|---------------|------|---------------|----------------------|--------------|----------|-----------|---------|
| 1 | 08-00-87-00-4F-45 | 8 TN3270user | -Lte | 140.179.80.75 | 25 May 1996 15:38:33 | | | | |
| 1 | 08-00-87-00-4F-45 | 8 TN3270user | -D 0 | 140.179.80.75 | 25 May 1996 15:38:33 | 25 May 1996 | 15:40:55 | 13 | 92 |
| 2 | 08-00-87-00-4F-45 | 1 | -Lte | 140.179.80.31 | 25 May 1996 15:39:54 | | | | |
| 2 | 08-00-87-00-4F-45 | 1 | -D 0 | 140.179.80.31 | 25 May 1996 15:39:54 | 25 May 1996 | 15:40:57 | 13 | 92 |
| 3 | 08-00-87-00-4F-45 | 2 | -Lte | 140.179.80.32 | 25 May 1996 15:39:54 | | | | |
| 3 | 08-00-87-00-4F-45 | 2 | -D 0 | 140.179.80.32 | 25 May 1996 15:39:54 | 25 May 1996 | 15:40:58 | 13 | 92 |
| 4 | 08-00-87-00-4F-45 | 3 | -Rte | 140.179.80.33 | 25 May 1996 15:39:54 | | | | |
| 4 | 08-00-87-00-4F-45 | 3 | -D 0 | 140.179.80.33 | 25 May 1996 15:39:54 | 25 May 1996 | 15:40:59 | 15 | 92 |
| | | | | | | | | | |

Figure 19. Sample Accounting Display

Enabling the Verbose Account Log

The Verbose account log records all the information included in the default account log, plus the following details:

- Messages from UNIX daemons (lpd, rwhod, fingerd, and routed) that are enabled.
- ARAP, PPP, SLIP, and CSLIP activity, if these protocols are enabled.
- Information about syntax errors in the Nested Menu file, if one exists. The log also indicates that the access server did not find the nested menu file when it booted, if it was unavailable.

Verbose accounting mode also displays information such as the protocol types of sessions, in more detailed form than the default log. For example, the verbose log displays "Rtelnet" to indicate a remote Telnet session, rather than "Rte," which appears in the default account log.

You enable or disabled Verbose Accounting through the following command. You do not have to reboot the access server if you issue the Set command.

DEFINE SERVER VERBOSE ACCOUNTING [ENABLED] [DISABLED]

Figure 20 shows an example of verbose output:

| ACC | JUNTI | ING SUMM | MARY/SYSTEM | M LOG (ENTRIES WILL LOG AT OR BELOW PRIORITY LEVEL: 7 |
|-----|-------|----------|-------------|--|
| 22 | Jun | 1996 | 13:49:39 | RWHOD Message from chris, IP Addr 140.179.240.254 |
| 22 | Jun | 1996 | 13:50:44 | source:08-00-87-01-59-5A dest: 140.179.248.81 port:16 user:john smith type:Ltelnet |
| 22 | Jun | 1996 | 13:50:56 | source:08-00-87-01-59-5A dest:140.179.248.81 port:16 user:john smith type:D |
| rea | ∃on:(|) bytes | in:37 byte | es out:168 |
| 22 | Jun | 1996 13 | :51:26 | source:08-00-87-01-59-5A dest:140.179.248.81 port:16 user:john smith type:Ltelnet |
| 22 | Jun | 1996 | 13:52:58 | source:08-00-87-01-59-5A dest:140.179.248.81 port:16 user:john smith type:Lrlogin |
| 22 | Jun | 1996 | 13:54:12 | source:08-00-87-01-59-5A dest:140.179.248.81 port:16 user:john smith type:D |
| rea | son:(|) bvtes | in:45 bvte | es out:111 |

Figure 20. Verbose Account Log

Verbose Priority Number and Log File Location

Messages from UNIX daemons have associated priority numbers, which are based on the severity (importance) of the message. For example, a Priority 0 message has high severity, and can indicate an abnormal system shutdown. A Priority 6 message is normal and typically indicates status information. You can specify the message types that the log file accepts — based on severity — by assigning a priority number to the account log. The server then logs only those messages that have a priority number equal to or below the number you specify. Table 16 lists the message types and their priority numbers. The default priority number is 5.

You can also specify, through the same command, whether the UNIX host logs accounting information to a file in the kernel or to a UNIX facility. By default, the host logs the information to the kernel. If you want the host to log it to a facility instead, you must set up the facility on the host and specify it at the access server. Refer to the MAN pages on the UNIX host for instructions.

| Message Type | Priority | Description | | |
|--------------|----------|---|--|--|
| LOG_EMERG | 0 | A severe condition. The access server usually broadcasts a priority 0 message to all users because it can affect their ability to work at the host. | | |
| LOG_ALERT 1 | | A condition that the system manager needs to correct immediately, such as a corrupted system database. | | |
| LOG_CRIT | 2 | A critical condition, such as a hard device error. | | |
| LOG_ERR | 3 | A software error condition. | | |
| LOG_WARNING | 4 | A warning message. | | |
| LOG_NOTICE | 5 | Conditions that are not error, but which might require specific procedures to adjust them. | | |
| LOG_INFO | 6 | Normal, informational messages. | | |
| LOG_DEBUG | 7 | Messages that contain information useful for testing only. | | |

Table 16 - Priority Numbers for Messages from UNIX Daemons

Use this command to specify a priority number:

```
DEFINE/SET SERVER VERBOSE PRIORITY number LOG FACILITY [USER number]
```

[LOCAL number]

To use this command, Verbose Accounting must be enabled. The following example sets the verbose priority to 7, thereby allowing all messages to be logged.

Xyplex>> set server verbose priority 7

Clearing the Account Log

To clear information from the account log, you can reboot the access server or use this command:

Xyplex>> clear server accounting

Associated Displays

The following sections describe the commands that you use to enable, disable, and view information associated with the accounting feature.

Show/Monitor Server Accounting

These commands display the accounting information that the access server has logged. Figure 19 shows a sample display. Xyplex recommends that you set up your terminal to display 132 characters per line.

Show/List/Monitor Server Characteristics

These commands display the maximum number of accounting entries that the server can store, and indicate whether verbose accounting is enabled.

Show/List Unit and Show/List/Monitor Server Alternate Status

These displays indicate:

- Whether SYSLOGD is enabled
- The IP address of the UNIX host where the account log resides
- The location of the account log on the host

Maintaining Boot Records

This section describes commands that change settings in the Initialization Records (also called "boot records") of access and printer servers that have internal, NonVolitile Storage (NVS). These commands provide an alternative to the Initialization Configuration menu for changing these settings.

The MAXserver 1608A, 1620, and 1640 Access Servers have three Initialization Records and support the commands covered in this section.

NOTE: Network 9000 Access Server 720 modules also have three Initialization Records. The commands for changing these records are described in the manual *Managing Network 9000 Modules and Power Supplies.*

This section describes each setting in an Initialization Record and explains how to change it. It also includes information about how to reset all initialization settings to defaults. The section covers the following topics:

- Viewing initialization parameters
- Status of MAXserver 1608A/1620/1640 Initialization Records
- Enabling and disabling protocols
- Resetting parameters to defaults

Viewing Initialization Settings

You can view the settings in an Initialization Record by issuing the List/Monitor Server Loaddump Characteristics command. On MAXserver 1608A/1620/1640 units you can specify the primary (Record 1), secondary (Record 2), or tertiary (Record 3) Initialization Records; the primary record is the default. Figure 21 shows a sample display for a MAXserver 1620:

```
Xyplex> LIST SERVER LOADDUMP PRIMARY CHARACTERISTICS
MX1620 V6.0 Rom 460000 HW 00.00.00 Lat Protocol V5.2 Uptime: 21 06:24:56
Address: 08-00-87-03-45-67 Name: X034567 Number: 0
Primary record: Enabled
Internet Address: 192.168.181.199
Internet Load Host: 192.168.240.183
Internet Load Gateway: 0.0.0.0
Internet Load File: xpcsrv20.sys
Internet Delimiter: None
Software: XPCSRV20
Image Load Protocols Enabled: CARD, DTFTP, RARP
Dump Protocols Enabled: XMOP, MOP, BOOTP, RARP
Parameter Load Protocols Enabled: NVS
```

Figure 21. Server Loaddump Primary Characteristics - MX-1620

The following sections describe the settings in each field of the display, the possible values for each setting, and how to change them.

Status of MX-1608A/1620/1640 Initialization Records

A MAXserver 1608A/1620/1640 maintains three Initialization Records in NVS. The server first attempts to load its software using the information in Initialization Record 1, if it is enabled. If it cannot load successfully, it attempts to load using Record 2, if enabled. If it fails again, it attempts to use Record 3, if enabled. If all three attempts fail, the server begins the sequence again with Record 1.

The Primary Record field in Figure 21 shows the status of Initialization Record 1 — either Enabled or Disabled. By default, only Record 1 on a MAXserver 1608A/1620/1640 is enabled. Initialization records have values for all settings, whether they are enabled or not. The Primary Record field does not appear in the Loaddump Characteristics screen for servers with a single Initialization Record.

This command changes the status of an Initialization Record:

DEFINE SERVER LOADDUMP [record] [ENABLED] [DISABLED]

The *record* specifies either Primary, Secondary, or Tertiary. The default is primary. An example follows:

Xyplex>> define server loaddump secondary enabled

Issuing this command enables the access server to attempt to load software and parameters using Initialization Record 2, if it fails when using Record 1.

Enabling and Disabling Protocols

The network protocols that are enabled by default for loading and dumping vary with different server models. Table 17 shows the protocols that are enabled by default and the other available protocols:

| Product | Software Load Image | Parameter File | Dump File | | |
|--|--|-------------------------------------|------------------------------|--|--|
| MAXserver 1608A/1620/1640 Access Servers | CARD XMOP MOP BOOTP RARP DTFTP* | NVS XMOP MOP BOOTP RARP | XMOP MOP BOOTP RARP | | |
| * Not enabled by default. | | | | | |

Table 17 - Protocols for Loading and Dumping

The Show/Monitor Server Status display shows the name and location of the software load host, if the access server obtained the software load image from the network. The Show/List/Monitor Parameter Server display shows the name and location of the parameter server.

By default, a MAXserver 1608A/1620/1640 obtains its software file (load image) from a flash memory card, and its parameters from NVS. If a memory card is not present, or NVS is disabled, the server requests the software load image and parameter files from a Xyplex loader, or one or more hosts on the network. The enabled protocols determine where the access server obtains the files: XMOP indicates another Xyplex loader; MOP indicates a VAX/VMS host; and RARP, BOOTP and DTFTP indicate UNIX hosts.

Each Initialization Record has several network loading and dumping protocols. These protocols are only used when the software load image or parameters cannot be loaded from the flash memory card.

Changing Protocols through Commands

Use this command to enable or disable software and parameter loading protocols:

```
DEFINE SERVER LOAD [record] usage PROTOCOL [protocol] [ENABLED][ALL][ALL][DISABLED]
```

The *record* specifies either Primary, Secondary, or Tertiary. The *usage* variable specifies either IMAGE or PARAMETERS. You cannot disable all protocols in an Initialization Record. An example follows:

Xyplex>> define server load primary image protocol xmop disabled

Use this command to enable or disable dumping protocols (protocols that the server uses when dumping its memory contents):

DEFINE SERVER DUMP [record] PROTOCOL [protocol] [ENABLED] [ALL] [ALL] [DISABLED]

The *record* variable specifies either Primary, Secondary, or Tertiary. An example follows:

Xyplex>> define server dump primary protocol rarp disabled

CARD, NVS, XMOP, and MOP Protocols

The access server uses the CARD, NVS, XMOP, and MOP protocols to search for a software load image or parameter file at a particular location, which is determined by the protocol. You can change the load image filename by using the command described in "Changing the Software Filename". The current load image filename appears in the Software field of the Loaddump Characteristics display. The XMOP and MOP protocols can also send a memory dump file to a dump server.

CARD Protocol

The CARD protocol looks for a software load image on a memory card. This is the default load image protocol for these products. This protocol does not apply to dump files, since Xyplex memory cards do not function as dump servers.

NVS Protocol

The NVS protocol looks for a parameter file in NVS. This is the default protocol for loading parameters on all server models. This protocol does not apply to the load image or dump files.

XMOP and MOP Protocols

The XMOP and MOP protocols look for a software load image file, a parameter file, or a dump server. The access server first attempts to use XMOP, then MOP.

The Xyplex Maintenance Operations Protocol (XMOP) looks for the files on a Xyplex loader on the network. Refer to the *Software Installation Guide for Xyplex Loader Kits* for more information about using XMOP. The DEC Maintenance Operations Protocol (MOP) looks for a software load image and parameter file on a DEC host that runs the MOP protocol. The access server can also use MOP to send information to a dump server. Refer to the *Software Installation Guide for VMS Kits* for information about setting up a MOP host.

Changing the Software Filename

The software load image filename appears in the Software field of the Loaddump Characteristics display. For MAXserver 1608A, 1620, and 1640 units, it is XPCSRV20.sys. Use this command to specify a name for the software load image file:

DEFINE SERVER LOAD [record] SOFTWARE filename
[ALL]

The *record* specifies either Primary, Secondary, or Tertiary. The *filename* variable specifies the software load image filename. An example follows:

Xyplex>> define server load primary software XPSPECIAL

BOOTP and RARP Protocols

The Bootstrap Protocol (BOOTP) and the Reverse Address Resolution Protocol (RARP) look for the software load image and parameter filenames on a UNIX host. The access server first tries BOOTP, then RARP. You do not need to supply any additional information in the Initialization Records if the BOOTP and RARP hosts are configured correctly. The *Software Installation Guide for UNIX Hosts* describes BOOTP and RARP setup.

DTFTP Protocol

The Directed Trivial File Transfer Protocol (DTFTP) searches for a specific software load image file on a UNIX host. You supply the name of the software load image file, the IP address of the load host, and the IP address of the access server. If the load host exists on a remote branch of the network, you must also provide the IP address of a gateway. Default values do not exist for this information. The access server does not use DTFTP to obtain a parameter file or to send information to a dump server. Unless you use DTFTP, you do not have to specify IP settings in the Initialization Record.

The following commands provide information for loading through DTFTP. Each setting is covered in a subsequent section.

Internet Load Address:

DEFINE SERVER LOAD [record] IP ADDRESS ip-address
[ALL]

Internet Load Host:

DEFINE SERVER LOAD [record] IP HOST ip-address
[ALL]

Internet Load Gateway:

DEFINE SERVER LOAD [record] IP GATEWAY ip-address
[ALL]

Internet Load File:

DEFINE SERVER LOAD [record] IP FILE "/path/filename"

IP Address

The IP address specifies the IP address of the access server, which the load server host uses for DTFTP loading. (This is the address assigned through the Define Server IP Address command.)

MAXserver 1608A/1620/1640 Access Servers allow you to change the IP Load Address in the three Initialization Records. Figure 21 shows 0.0.0.0 in this field; this is the default address on these units. An example follows:

Xyplex>> define server load primary IP address 192.168.118.2

IP File

The IP File field specifies the pathname and filename of the software load image on the IP Load Host. The access server searches for this filename when it uses the DTFTP protocol to obtain the software load image during initialization. An example follows:

Xyplex>> define server load IP file "/usr/xyplex/images/ xpcsrv20.sys"

IP Host

The IP Host specifies the IP address of the host on the network where the software load image file resides. Figure 21 shows 0.0.0.0 in this field; this is the default. An example follows:

IP Gateway

The IP Gateway specifies the IP address of a gateway on the network, which the access server uses to gain access to the IP load host. Not all network configurations require a gateway. Figure 21 shows 0.0.0.0 in this field; this is the default. An example follows:

```
Xyplex>> define server load primary IP gateway
192.168.111.5
```

Resetting Parameters to Defaults

The following command resets all initialization settings to defaults. Note that the command is not supported by all server models.

```
DEFINE SERVER LOADDUMP [record] DEFAULT [ALL]
```

The record specifies either Primary, Secondary, or Tertiary.

If you specify Secondary or Tertiary, this command also disables the Initialization Record. (This is because these records are disabled by default.)

Using Security Features

Xyplex Access Servers offer security features that control access to server ports and devices on the network. You can use these features individually, or combine them to achieve different levels of network security. This section describes how these following features affect your networking environment and discusses considerations that you should be aware of before using them at your site.

This section describes how the following features affect your networking environment, and describe the commands that you use to enable each feature.

Controlling Access to the Server

Passwords Privilege levels The Kerberos Security System SecurID Authentication RADIUS Authentication RADIUS Callback (Dialback) RADIUS Accounting

Controlling Access to Network Resources

The Port Access Characteristic Limited View Authorized Groups Service Passwords Internet Security

Using Access Server Scripts to Enhance Security

Login Scripts Dialback Modem Control Scripts

Passwords

You can activate or change these server passwords:

- Login password (default: ACCESS)
- Privilege password (default: SYSTEM)
- Maintenance password (default: None)

These passwords prevent persons who do not know them from accessing the server. The privileged and maintenance passwords have default values, which you should change to other values as part of your basic server setup.

Login Password

When you enable the Login Password feature on a server port, a person attempting to log on to that port must enter a password in order to gain access. A single password is used at all ports where the feature is enabled. The login password feature is optional; the server does not prompt for it unless you enable it on a port.

The default login password is ACCESS.

Use the following commands to enable the Login Password feature and define a password. The feature is disabled by default.

DEFINE PORT [port-list] PASSWORD [ENABLED | ALL | DISABLED] DEFINE/SET SERVER LOGIN PASSWORD "password"

Examples

Xyplex>> define port 1-8 password enabled Xyplex>> define server login password "login123"

Login Password Prompt

The Login Password prompt appears when a user attempts to log on to a port where the Login Password feature is enabled. The default prompt is:

#

Use the following command to change the password:

DEFINE/SET SERVER LOGIN PROMPT "prompt-string"

Privilege Password

You must enter the privilege password to set a port to privileged mode. The default password is SYSTEM. Xyplex recommends that you change it, to restrict access to the commands that:

- Change the server's settings
- Affect other users' ports
- Affect access to destinations on the network

You might want to change the privilege password periodically, to limit the number of users who can set privileged mode.

Refer to "Privilege Levels" for more information.

Use this command to define the privilege password:

DEFINE/SET SERVER PRIVILEGE PASSWORD "password"

Example

Xyplex>> define server privilege password "xyplex9"

Maintenance Password

When you enable the Maintenance Password feature, you must enter a hexadecimal password when attempting to enter the following commands:

- Remote Console
- DECnet NCP Trigger command
- NCP Load commands

These commands are only useful to users who manage or maintain the server network. The default Maintenance Password is None. Use the following command to change the maintenance password:

DEFINE/SET SERVER MAINTENANCE PASSWORD "password"

Example

Xyplex>> define server maintenance password "654321"

Privilege Levels

Privilege levels determine which commands users can enter at server ports. The server supports three privilege levels, which are described in Table 18. The default privilege level for all ports is Nonprivileged.

| Privilege Level | Description |
|-----------------|---|
| Privilege | A user in privileged mode can issue all commands, including those that change and monitor server and port settings, and those that reboot and shut down the server. (Many of the commands in this manual are only accepted in privileged mode.) To set privileged mode, you must enter the privilege password. |
| Nonprivilege | A user in nonprivileged mode cannot issue commands that change and monitor the settings of the server or other ports, or commands that reboot and shut down the server. |
| Security | Secure ports accept certain nonprivileged commands, including commands that establish sessions on the network and display and change port settings. |

Table 18 - Privilege Levels

Use the following command to change the privilege level to secure. Unless you set the default privilege level of a port to Secure through the following command, a port has the Nonprivileged security level:

DEFINE/SET PORT[port-list]SECURITY [ENABLED|ALL|DISABLED]

A user at a nonprivileged port can set the port to privileged mode through this command:

SET PRIVILEGE

To restore nonprivileged mode, issue this command:

SET NOPRIVILGE

The Secure level might be appropriate for many ports. Secure ports accept commands that:

- Establish sessions
- Display information about the port and network destinations
- Change some port settings

You can change the following port settings while in secure mode:

- Session switching characters
- Multisessions feature
- TN3270 feature

Secure ports do not accept commands that affect:

- Server settings
- Other user's ports
- The accessibility of network destinations

If you want to limit the use of a port to commands that users need for normal daily work, consider making the port secure by default. The *Commands Reference Guide* describes commands that are available at secure ports only.

Remote Authentication Dial In User Service (RADIUS)

Xyplex Networks uses *Remote Authentication Dial In User Service* (*RADIUS*) *RFC 2058* (April 1997) and *Radius Accounting RFC 2059* (April 1997) for the requirements of the RADIUS implementation.

The Remote Authentication Dial In User Service (RADIUS) is a distributed security system that secures networks against unauthorized access. Xyplex Networks access servers provide security for the following network services through RADIUS:

| Service | Corresponding RADIUS Settings |
|----------------------------|--|
| Dedicated LAT Service | Service-Type = Login-User, Login-Service = LAT |
| Dedicated Telnet Service | Service-Type = Login-User, Login-Service = Telnet |
| Interactive | Service-Type = Shell-User* |
| Outbound Service (dialout) | Service-Type = Outbound-User |
| PPP | Service-Type = Framed-User, Framed- Protocol = PPP |
| SLIP | Service-Type = Framed-User, Framed- Protocol = SLIP |

* Shell-User is the Livingston Dictionary Keyword. For Merit use Exec-User as the Service-Type. Also note that earlier versions of the RADIUS server used dictionary files with Service-Type of Shell-User or Exec-User set to the value of 6. The current RADIUS server uses the value of 7.

The RADIUS configuration settings allow RADIUS database characteristics to be passed back to the access server, determining the type of service provided. NOTE: You can only configure one authentication method on any single port. If you try to enable RADIUS after another authentication method is defined (for example, Kerberos or SecurID), the attempt fails and produces an error message.

Understanding the RADIUS Authentication Process

The access server combined with the RADIUS server secures networks against unauthorized access. RADIUS authentication occurs through a series of communications between the access server and the RADIUS server. Once RADIUS has authenticated a user, the access server provides that user with access to the appropriate network services. The RADIUS server maintains a database that contains user authentication and network service access information.

The following example describes the steps in the RADIUS authentication process. In this example, the user attempts to gain access to an access server port.

- 1. The access server prompts the user for a username and password. The username can be up to 121 characters. All displays which show the username continue to print only the first 16 characters.
- 2. The access server takes the username and password, creates an accessrequest packet identifying the access server making the request, the username and password, and the port being used. The access server also suggests the Service-Type for the connection based on the configuration of the port. The default Service-Type is Shell-User. The access server then sends the packet to the designated RADIUS server for authentication.
 - NOTE: The user password is encrypted to prevent it from being intercepted and reused by an unwanted user. Do this by generating a random vector and placing it in the request header. A copy of the random vector is MD5 encoded using the configured secret. The user's password is then encrypted by xoring it with the encoded copy of the random vector.

- 3. The RADIUS server validates the request and then decrypts the password.
- 4. The username and password are authenticated by the RADIUS server.
- 5. Upon successful authentication, the RADIUS server sends an accessaccept packet containing any specific configuration information associated with that user.
- 6. The access server then grants the user the services requested.

If at any point in the authentication process conditions are not met, the RADIUS server sends an authentication rejection to the access server and the user is denied access to the network. Figure 22 shows an example of the RADIUS authentication process.



Figure 22. RADIUS Authentication Process

Using Kerberos Authentication

Kerberos is a *network authentication service* developed by the Massachusetts Institute of Technology. It provides a central database of encrypted (coded) data, such as user passwords. *Clients* such as access servers use the information in the database to verify login requests. Kerberos encrypts data using the Department of Defense Data Encryption Standard (DES). Xyplex Access Servers with at least 1 MB of memory support Kerberos.

You can set up access servers running V5.3.1 or later software to verify login requests through Kerberos Version 4 or 5. SNMP must be also enabled on the server to use Version 5.

A Kerberos system includes a *Kerberos Master* host and one or more *Kerberos Server* hosts. The Master host maintains the database of encrypted information for a network organization called a *realm*. The Master host provides data for the Server hosts when clients contact the Server hosts to verify login requests. You define *Kerberos passwords* for access server users on the Kerberos Master host.

NOTE: Kerberos requires software that runs on the TCP/IP host that serves as a Kerberos Master. Contact Xyplex Customer Support if you need this software.



Figure 23 shows a Kerberos realm with a Master host and three Server hosts.

Figure 23. Kerberos Realm

When Kerberos is in use, the access server prompts users for a Kerberos password as part of the login process. The password is stored in the Master host database. The access server uses the password to obtain validation from a Kerberos Server host before allowing the user to log on to the port.
Validation information from the Server host is encrypted. The access server uses the Kerberos password as a key to decrypt (decode) the information. Figure 24 shows the password verification process.



Figure 24. Kerberos Password Verification

If the user does not enter the correct password, the server will continue to prompt for a password — up to the number of times specified by the Server Password Limit setting. If the user exceeds this limit, the server logs out the port.

Using SecurID Authentication

SecurID is a system of server software, client software, and SecurID cards. The system is designed to secure a TCP/IP network, preventing unauthorized users from gaining access to resources on the network, but allowing authorized users to access the resources easily.

When SecurID is in use, a user must specify a SecurID Personal Identification Number (PIN) and the password (PASSCODE) shown on a SecurID card to log on to the server. Once the user has logged on to the server, he can connect to resources on the network. These resources can also be protected through Kerberos authentication or other security features.

The following sections cover:

- SecurID Client Features
- SecurID Client Setup

SecurID Client Features

The following sections describe the key features of the Xyplex SecurID client implementation.

Certification and Interoperability Status

Xyplex products are certified by Security Dynamics Technologies, Inc. Xyplex products that support the SecurID client implementation support both the DES and SDI encryption mechanisms. The SecurID client implementation operates with Security Dynamics ACE/Server. NOTE: Compatibility with ACE/Server Software. The SecurID client software that runs on the access server is based on V1.1 of the ACE/Server software supplied by Security Dynamics Technologies, Inc. The software operates with ACE/Server hosts running ACE/Server software V1.1, or later.

Compatibility with Other Xyplex Security Mechanisms

SecurID authentication can be used in conjunction with other Xyplex access security methods. Port password access occurs before Kerberos authentication. Authentication via SecurID occurs after Kerberos authentication occurs, but before the server runs a dialback script and/or login script. After the user has been authenticated and has logged on to the server port, other security mechanisms (such as Internet Security, LAT groups, dedicated services, additional SecurID authentication on network hosts, etc.) allow or prevent access to network resources.

Standard Setup and Administration Procedures

You use standard setup and administration procedures to configure the access server as a SecurID client on the ACE/Server host, and to administer the system (e.g., adding users, etc.). These procedures are described in the ACE/Server Manual from Security Dynamics Technologies, Inc.

Time Synchronization

Xyplex Access Servers use the time specified by the ACE/Server as its system clock time. The access server updates this time from the ACE/Server every 24 hours.

Xyplex Product Support

The SecurID feature is only supported on units that use enhanced or Multi-Megabyte load images (XPCSRV20.SYS and XPCS00C.SYS). These load images run on the following units:

- Network 9000 Model 720
- MAXserver 1604, 1608B, 1620, 1640 units with at least 2 MB of memory
- MAXserver 1820

Using Internet Security

The Internet security feature enables you to restrict inbound and outbound connection requests on an IP-based network. You can restrict outbound connections from specific ports to specific IP addresses, and to specific nodes at an IP address. Similarly, you can restrict inbound connections to server ports from specific IP addresses, and from specific nodes at an IP address.

To use this feature, you create entries in an Internet Security table for each port. The entries provide information about where you allow connection requests on the network. The security tables allow all connections by default.

Use the Define/Set Port IP Security commands to set the security for each port.

Controlling Access to Network Resources

The access server offers several ways to prevent or restrict access to resources on the network. These include:

- Setting Port Access
- Setting Limited View
- Authorized Groups
- Service Passwords
- Internet Security Table

These features are described in the following sections.

Make sure that security is set up at the hosts and other devices on your network, as well as on the access server. The security features you can use include usernames, passwords, and host-specific security settings.

Port Access Setting

The Port Access setting specifies the type of connections that the server allows to and from a port:

- Local
- Remote
- Dynamic
- None

Local is the default. The local default setting allows the device to make to the LAN to the network. The Remote setting allows only from the LAN to the port. This setting is appropriate if the device connected to the port is a line printer. Dynamic allows either incoming or outgoing calls. None allows no calls from either direction. This setting might be appropriate on a printer server that has only one parallel printer connected to it. In this case, you might improve printing speed if you connect the printer to Port 3 and define the access setting for Port 4 to None.

Use these commands to define the Port Access type. The default setting is Local.

```
DEFINE/SET PORT [port-list] ACCESS [LOCAL]
[ALL]
[REMOTE]
[DYNAMIC]
[NONE]
```

Example

Xyplex>> define port 10 access dynamic

Limited View Protection for Network Resources

The Limited View setting prevents users at nonprivileged and secure ports from using commands that display the names and addresses of nodes, IP domains, and services on the network. These commands include Show/List Destinations, Show/List Domains, Show/List Nodes, and Show/List Services.

This setting enhances network security because it limits the view of the network to users at ports where the setting is enabled. It does not directly prevent a user from gaining access to a resource, however, if the user learns the name or address of the resource from another source.

This command enables or disables the Limited View setting:

DEFINE/SET PORT [port-list] LIMITED VIEW [ENABLED]
[DISABLED]

Example

Xyplex>> define port 3-7 limited view enabled

Authorized LAT Service Groups

The authorized groups setting restricts access from specified ports to groups of LAT services that you specify with group codes. When a network user attempts to connect to a service, the access server matches the group code of the port to the group code of the service node. The server allows a connection if the codes match, but denies the connection if the codes do not match. Use the following command to define authorized groups for ports. Default: Group 0 Enabled; Groups 1-255 Disabled.

```
DEFINE/SET PORT [port-list] AUTHORIZED GROUPS [group-list]
[ENABLED]
[ALL] [ALL] [DISABLED]
```

Example

Xyplex>> define port 3-5 authorized groups 48-60 enabled

Password Protection for LAT Services

When you define a LAT service, you can require that users enter a password to access that service. The server prompts for the password after the user enters a Connect command to start a session with the service, and before the logon banner for the service node appears. There is no default LAT service password.

DEFINE/SET SERVICE PASSWORD password

Example

Xyplex>> define service password chris

Time Server Enhancement

When an access server has a configured time server, the access server shortly after it boots does a directed UDP query for TIME service to the Time server. If there is no response, and the time server is ENABLED (Not Required), there is an attempt to get the time from other servers according to the following priority:

Time Server (via UDP port 37) Kerberos Server(s)(via UDP port 37) SecurID Server(s)(via UDP port 37) XMOP/MOP load server UDP Broadcast (via UDP port 37) Clock starts at zero (and can then be manually configured)

Time, Kerberos, or SecurID servers are configurable together but implemented as mutually exclusive with regard to querying for the time. If both the Time and Kerberos Servers are defined, then only the Time Server is used. If both the Time and SecurID servers are defined, then only the Time Server is used. If no Time server is defined but a Kerberos and SecurID servers are defined, then the Kerberos servers are used. If no Time and no Kerberos server are defined but a SecurID server is defined, then the SecurID server is used. There is a daily attempt to resynchronize with the TIME SERVER at 2:00 a.m, just as there is an attempt to resynchronize with Kerberos or SecurID Time Servers.

Servers which run Kerberos or SecurID should have the Time Server address set to 0. Kerberos works with a configured Time Server matching the Primary Kerberos Server. However, if you have a secondary Kerberos Server, the secondary Kerberos server is never queried for the time if the Time Server is non-zero.

Once the time is obtained by one of these methods, the time server information is saved and displayed in the field labeled "Time Received From:" on the SERVER ALTERNATE STATUS display. The command syntax is as follows:

SET/DEFINE SERVER TIME SERVER ENABLED | REQUIRED n.n.n.n SET/DEFINE SERVER TIME SERVER DISABLED

If the timer server is required, only this time server is used to obtain the time. On failure, a repeat every minute to request the time from the required server occurs. If the time server is ENABLED, then this server is tried first before the other servers. Repeated attempts are made to query that server for one minute before checking time by other methods. A time server of zero and/or DISABLED means the time server is not used.

When the command is SET and the Time Server is ENABLED or REQUIRED, an immediate query time call to that time server occurs. Repeated attempts are made to query that server for one minute or until a response is received.

NOTE: The SET SERVER TIME SERVER DISABLED command does not disable the time server until the next resynchronization time, or 2:00 a.m. This may result in an extra broadcast going out at resynchronization time, or 2:00 a.m.

Only the DEFINE SERVER TIME ZONE command is implemented. The SET SERVER TIME ZONE command is ignored.

If the Time server is defined, it shows in the Show Server window.

RADIUS Security

The right amount of security varies from network to network, depending on what data resides on the network and on who should -- and should not -- have access to it. A good security strategy usually involves several layers of protection, such as passwords, dial-back security, and detection of illegal attempts to gain access to the network.

These traditional methods are rarely enough today, however. As remote access becomes more popular and more business data is transmitted over networks, it becomes more important -- and more difficult -- to provide the right balance of access and security for a company's network. Simple password systems are vulnerable to attack, and mobile users need a more flexible system than dial-back.

While some of today's security systems address one or another aspect of security, the most comprehensive and sophisticated approach is provided by the Remote Authentication Dial In User Service (RADIUS). RADIUS is a standard defined by the Internet Engineering Task Force (IETF) that is quickly being adopted in the networking industry. It is a distributed security system that provides multiple levels of security options to create a very secure dial-in access authentication system.

Multiple Levels of Security

RADIUS combines several approaches. The first layer is a standard password protection system with a user ID and password. This system, called a multiple-use password system since the user enters the same password each time they log in, is vulnerable to attack. Multiple-use passwords can be stolen, or even guessed by a computer program using a dictionary, and then used to break into a network. The solution is singleuse, or time-sensitive, passwords.

Challenge/Response Process

Therefore, RADIUS includes a second level of protection, an optional challenge/response process based on single-use passwords. This is usually accomplished with a special hand-held device that accepts the challenge and computes the correct response. This authentication capability can be distributed among multiple authentication servers for greater security.

The third level of security is an optional configuration script that dynamically configures the port with optional source destination filters. Each user's network access can be controlled by a set of rules tailored to the individual user, restricting the user to specific areas of the network.

Easy Installation and Integration

There are additional advantages to using RADIUS. It is very easy to install and it integrates easily with other existing security systems. For example, a RADIUS authentication server can be configured to connect to an existing Kerberos server for user ID and password support, saving the time and effort of setting up a new authentication server from scratch.

Getting Started - RADIUS

The basic steps for configuring RADIUS authentication are:

- 1. Configuring the RADIUS server on the Host.
- 2. Configuring RADIUS on the Access Server.
- 3. Defining RADIUS Authentication.
- 4. Selecting Access Server Service.

Configuring the RADIUS Server on the Host

Before you can configure RADIUS on your access server you must configure a RADIUS server on your RADIUS server host.

In general, RADIUS server implementations are available on the Internet. These implementations generally use a daemon process that interacts with RADIUS clients (located on access servers and other remote access devices).

The daemon uses a list of clients and associated secrets that it shares with these clients. The per-client secret is used to encrypt and validate communications between the RADIUS server and the client. The file used to keep the client list and secrets is the "clients" file.

Another file used by the daemon to store the users that are authenticated is the "users" file. The "user" file contains the RADIUS attributes associated with a particular user. As a minimum, this file must contain the user's username and password (depending on the RADIUS server used).

To configure the RADIUS server, refer to your RADIUS host documentation. Xyplex Networks recommends that you use the Merit RADIUS server implementation. Information for the Merit RADIUS server can be found at http://www.merit.edu. Refer to the GOPHER SERVER and the MERIT Network Information Center for new releases.

Configuring RADIUS on the Access Server

In order to configure RADIUS, ensure that the access server has a minimum of 3–MB of memory installed.

To configure RADIUS authentication on your access server, complete these steps:

1. Create a copy of your present parameter file.

For example, copy the present x123456.sys file to a file called x123456.old. This copy can be used if you need to restore your old parameters.

- 2. Insert the flash card supplied with your access server software kit or software update into the memory card slot.
- 3. Boot up the new image.
- 4. Enable RADIUS on the access server using the following command:

Xyplex>> DEFINE SERVER RADIUS ENABLED

- 5. Reboot the access server.
- Confirm that RADIUS is enabled using the following command: Xyplex> SHOW SERVER RADIUS

The system displays a screen similar to the following:

| Xyplex> SHOW SERVER RADIUS | | | | | |
|----------------------------|----------|----------|----------|-----------|----------------------|
| AS/720 V6.0.1 Rom 4A0 | 000 HW 0 | 0.02.00 | Lat Prot | cocol V5. | 2 Uptime: 0 04:31:26 |
| | | | | | xx Mar 199x 20:28:29 |
| RADIUS Primary Server: | 140.179 | .248.145 | | | |
| Resolved Address: | 140.179 | .248.145 | | Secret: | Configured |
| RADIUS Secondary Server | : | | | | |
| Resolved Address: | | 0.0.0.0 | | Secret: | Default |
| RADIUS Port Number: | 1645 | | | Request | Timeout (sec): 5 |
| RADIUS Logging: | ENABLED | | | Chap Cha | llenge Size: 16 |
| RADIUS Server Retries: | 3 | | | | |
| RADIUS Ports Enabled: | 2 | | | | |
| Successful Logins: | 4 | | | Configur | ation Failures: O |
| Authentication Failures | : | 0 | | | Policy Failures: |
| 0 | | | | | |
| Server access attempts | | | Primary | | Secondary |
| Successful: | | | 4 | | 0 |
| Failed: | | | 0 | | 0 |
| | | | | | |

The Chap Challenge Size is the size of the challenge sent to the peer for Chap and to the RADIUS server for verification. Note, the peer should work with any size challenge. However, the current RADIUS servers only support challenge sizes of 16.

| Field | Description |
|----------------------------|---|
| Successful Logins | Number of successful logins. |
| Authentication Failures | Number of rejections returned by the RADIUS Server. |
| Configuration Failures* | Number of failures returned by the RADIUS server due to incorrect values being entered for supported attributes. |
| Policy Failures* | Number of failures returned by the RADIUS server due to a port being hard-configured for one type of RADIUS service-type, but the RADIUS server returned a different service- type. Policy failures also occur when the service-type selected by APD or Solicitation does not match the service- type returned by the RADIUS server. |

The following table describes the various RADIUS counters:

* These failures are local failures only and are not attributed to the RADIUS server. However, they may be a result of bad values from the RADIUS server that cannot be handled.

7. Check the primary/secondary RADIUS server host to ensure that the RADIUS server client database has been configured.

8. Specify the secret shared between the RADIUS client and the primary RADIUS Server. Define the client secret on the access server using the following command:

Xyplex>> DEFINE/SET SERVER RADIUS PRIMARY SECRET secret

NOTE: This secret must match the secret defined in the client file located on the RADIUS host.

9. Define the RADIUS primary server using the following command:

Xyplex>>DEFINE/SET SERVER RADIUS PRIMARY SERVER<*ip-address>* <domain name> <none>

Specify either the IP address or the domain name of the RADIUS server. When "none" is specified, the secret is reset to the default value (secret).

NOTE: If you plan to use a secondary server, complete steps 8 and 9 again replacing "Primary" with "Secondary" in the command.

The secondary server is used when:

- The primary server cannot be accessed.
- The primary server rejects the authentication request (wrong password, no user record).

You can now enable RADIUS on the individual access server ports.

Configuring RADIUS Authentication on a Per-Port Basis

RADIUS allows you to enable authentication on a per-port basis. The Service-Type used by a port can be one of the following types:

- Selected by the user
- Selected by the Access Server
- Selected by RADIUS

User Service-Selection

The User Service-Selection uses either AutoProtocol Detect (APD) or RADIUS Solicitation modes to provide the Service-Type selection.

User Service-Selection — Uses either AutoProtocol Detect (APD) or RADIUS Solicitation modes to provide the Service-Type selection. These modes allow users to select a service explicitly by entering a choice at the solicitation prompt or implicitly by starting a protocol allowing APD to determine the protocol.

Access Server Service-Selection — Statically configure the port for a desired Service-Type (PPP, SLIP, Telnet, etc.). Once configured, this is the only service you can access.

RADIUS Service-Selection — Used when no service-type is configured using Access Service-Selection or User Service-Selection. The access server defaults to "Shell-User" but accepts whatever Service-Type is returned by the RADIUS server.

Using AutoProtocol Detect (APD)

For APD remote access login, the actual communication with the RADIUS server is held off until APD determines the protocol type being used. After the protocol is determined, the authentication is made with that protocol as the Service-Type. If a Service-Type other than the requested Service-Type is returned, the port is logged off (this is considered a policy failure). If other attributes, such as Framed-Address are returned from a configuration record, they are applied to the current session only. Once the session is terminated, any parameters configured through RADIUS return to their original values.

Defining the RADIUS Solicitation Mode

The RADIUS Solicitation Mode allows you to configure individual ports to display a prompt before the username and password sequence. This prompt describes the Service-Type option and is used to determine what to send as the desired Service-Type to the RADIUS server. The access server sends the Service-Type to the RADIUS server. If the RADIUS server returns a Service-Type other than the Service-Type requested, the port is logged off.

To enable the RADIUS Solicitation Mode, enter the following command:

Xyplex>> DEFINE/SET PORT n RADIUS SOLICITS ENABLED

The port login sequence appears as follows:

```
Service-Type:
PPP=1, SLIP=2, Shell-User=3, Telnet=4, LAT=5
login (1-5):
Username>
Password>
```

To select a Service-Type, enter the corresponding number at the login: prompt. For example, to select the Service-Type Shell-User, enter the number 3 at the login: prompt.

Access Server Service-Selection

The Access Server Service-Selection mode operates when a Service-Type is defined on a port and no APD or RADIUS Solicitation is configured. Once defined, this Service-Type is the only service accessible.

Defining PPP and SLIP Authentication

To define PPP or SLIP on an access server port, use one of the following commands:

Xyplex> DEFINE PORT *n* PPP ENABLED Xyplex> DEFINE PORT *n* SLIP ENABLED

When an access server port has PPP or SLIP configured and RADIUS enabled, the access server sends the service type and frame protocol to the RADIUS server. The RADIUS server authenticates the information and returns the configuration information for the PPP or SLIP remote access login.

Your RADIUS authentication record must contain a service type of Framed-User and you must have Frame-Protocol PPP (or SLIP), or you are logged off the port. The following example shows an authenticated record returned from the RADIUS server.

```
Password = "password"
User-Service-Type = Framed-User
Framed-Protocol = PPP
Framed-Address = 172.19.250.85
```

In this example, the Framed-Address returned by the RADIUS server is applied to the PPP link and is used as the remote IP address during PPP negotiations. No other address may be used by this PPP peer.

NOTE: If RADIUS is enabled on a port (not by PAP/CHAP), the port expects the username and password to be entered interactively.

Defining PPP PAP Authentication

This is a privileged command. To define PPP PAP authentication to an access server port, enter the following command:

```
Xyplex>> DEFINE/SET PORT n PPP PAP
RADIUS | KERBEROS | ENABLED | DISABLED
```

The access server uses the RADIUS database to authenticate the username and password in a PPP PAP authentication request. The RADIUS server authenticates the user and returns the IP and/or IPX configuration information if it is contained in the user record.

NOTE: When using PPP PAP authentication, you may also have normal RADIUS authentication enabled. The result of this is that authentication occurs twice. Once for normal RADIUS and again for PPP PAP. When this occurs, the username and password may be the same or different but in either case, the Service-Type and protocol must be appropriate.

You have up to three tries to enter your correct username and password before RADIUS logs the port out.

NOTES: This command works with Windows 95 Dialup Networking and MacTCP. Other systems may have stacks that will, when seeing a PAP authorization not accepted, send a ATH command and disconnect the phone link.

When PAP is enabled, PAP usernames are restricted to 16 characters. Also when a port name is defined for a port, the defined 16 character username is used, rather than asking for a new name.

Defining PPP CHAP Authentication

To define PPP CHAP authentication to an access server port, enter the following command:

Xyplex>> DEFINE/SET PORT n PPP CHAP RADIUS ENABLED DISABLED

PPP CHAP provides dial-in users and attaching peers with an authentication method. This method is more powerful then PAP because no passwords are exchanged in the open.

You can also configure access server ports to require CHAP authentication for attaching PPP peers or to authenticate the access server to a peer. This is accomplished by defining a CHAP remote password that only the authenticator and peer know. This password is only used when the peer challenges the access server. CHAP may then periodically challenge the identity of the peer. To define the CHAP remote password, enter the following command:

Xyplex>> DEFINE/SET SERVER PPP CHAP REMOTE PASSWORD "password"

NOTE: The CHAP password defined on the peer should match the password field in the user record on the RADIUS server.

To define the period of time (in minutes) that a peer is re-challenged after the connection is established, enter the following command:

Xyplex>> DEFINE PORT n PPP CHAP CHALLENGE TIMER n

NOTES: A timer value of "0" disables this feature. You must log out of the port before this command is activated. This is the default value.

> When using PPP CHAP authentication, you may also have normal RADIUS authentication enabled. This causes authentication to occur twice. Once for normal RADIUS and again for PPP CHAP. When this occurs, the username and password may be the same or different but in either case, the Service-Type and protocol must be appropriate.

RADIUS Server-Selection

The RADIUS Service-Selection is the default service selection method used when no Service-Type is configured. When an authentication request is made to the RADIUS server, the Service-Type requested by the access server is the default; Shell-User (interactive login user). The RADIUS server selects the type of service allowed to that user based on the information in the user file for that username and password.

NOTE: If another Service-Type, other than Shell-User, is returned by the RADIUS server, it is accepted by the access server replacing the Shell-User default Service-Type.

To enable RADIUS authentication on an interactive port, enter the following command at the access server prompt:

Xyplex>> DEFINE/SET PORT n RADIUS ENABLED

Once RADIUS is enabled on the port, you are prompted for your username and password. To access the port, enter this information.

The configured RADIUS server authenticates your username and password, and sends the configuration record of the authenticated user back to the access server.

NOTE: As a minimum, the entry in the "User File" must contain the username and password for the RADIUS Service-Selection mode to work.

To confirm that RADIUS is enabled, enter the following command at the access server prompt:

Xyplex>> SHOW PORT n CHARACTERISTICS

Xyplex>> show port *n* characteristics Port n: rhw Character Size: 8 Input Speed: 9600 Flow Control: XON Output Speed: 9600 Parity: None Modem Control: Enabled Access: Local Local Switch: None Backwards Switch: None Name: PORT_2 Break: Local Session Limit: 4 Type: Forwards Switch: Ansi None CCL Modem Speaker: Inaudible CCL Name: None APD Timeout: APD Default: Unlimited Interactive APD: INTERACTIVE PPP SLIP Dialout Action: Logout Preferred Service: None Authorized Groups: 0 (Current) Groups: 0 Enabled Characteristics: Autoprompt, Broadcast, CHAP-Radius, Internet Connections, Line Editor, Loss Notification, Menu, Message Codes, Outbound Security, Output Flow Control, PAP-

The system displays a screen similar to the following:

Xyplex>>

Radius, Radius, ULI, Verification

Displaying RADIUS Server Parameters

To display your defined RADIUS server parameters, enter the following command:

Xyplex> show radius

The system displays a screen similar to the following:

| Xyplex> SHOW SERVER RADIUS | | | | |
|------------------------------|--------------------------|-------------------------------|--|--|
| AS/720 V6.0.1 Rom 4A0 | 000 HW 00.02.00 Lat Prot | tocol V5.2 Uptime: 0 04:31:26 | | |
| | | xx Dec 199x 20:28:29 | | |
| RADIUS Primary Server: | 140.179.248.145 | | | |
| Resolved Address: | 140.179.248.145 | Secret: Configured | | |
| RADIUS Secondary Server | : | | | |
| Resolved Address: | 0.0.0.0 | Secret: Default | | |
| RADIUS Port Number: | 1645 | Request Timeout (sec): 5 | | |
| RADIUS Logging: | ENABLED | Chap Challenge Size: 16 | | |
| RADIUS Server Retries: | 3 | | | |
| RADIUS Ports Enabled: | 2 | | | |
| Successful Logins: O | 4 | Configuration Failures: | | |
| Authentication Failures O | : 0 | Policy Failures: | | |
| Server access attempts | Primary | Secondary | | |
| Successful: | 4 | 0 | | |
| Failed: | 0 | 0 | | |

The Chap Challenge Size is the size of the challenge sent to the peer for Chap and to the RADIUS server for verification. Note, the peer should work with any size challenge. However, the current RADIUS servers only support challenge sizes of 16.

| Field | Description |
|-------------------------------|--|
| RADIUS Primary Server | The RADIUS primary server used for authentication attempts. Valid values are text strings up to 51 ASCII characters, specifying a DNS host name or a valid IP address. The default value is no configured primary server or the null string "". |
| Primary Resolved Address | The resolved IP address for the primary server. When the RADIUS primary server is specified as a DNS name, the name must be resolved to an IP address. The default value is the address 0.0.0.0. |
| RADIUS Secondary Server | The DNS name of the RADIUS secondary server used when the RADIUS primary server is not used or available. The default value is no configured secondary server or the null string "". |
| Secondary Resolved Address | The resolved address of the RADIUS server used for user verification when the primary server does not respond. The default value is the address 0.0.0.0. |
| RADIUS Port Number | The UDP port that RADIUS user verification requests are transmitted and received from. The default UDP port is 1645. |
| Request Timeout | The time between RADIUS client retransmissions to the RADIUS server when trying to authenticate a user. The default value is 5 seconds. |
| RADIUS Logging | Controls whether the access server logs messages to the access server accounting log file. The default setting is disabled. |
| RADIUS Server Retries | The number of times a particular server is tried. These tries are in succession for RADIUS accounting. The default value is 3. |

The following table describes the various login fields:

| RADIUS Ports Enabled | A list of ports that have RADIUS enabled for either interactive or PPP use. |
|--------------------------------------|--|
| Successful Logins | Number of successful logins. |
| Authentication Failures | Number of rejections returned by the RADIUS server. |
| Configuration Failures* | Number of failures returned by the RADIUS server due to incorrect values being entered for supported attributes. |
| Policy Failures* | Number of failures returned by the RADIUS server due to a port being hard- configured for one type of RADIUS service- type, but the RADIUS server returned a different service-type. |
| | Policy failures also occur when the service- type selected by APD or Solicitation does not match the service-type returned by the RADIUS server. |
| Successful Server Access Attempts | The number of times the RADIUS server and the access server successfully exchanged messages. This is the combined count for Authentication and Accounting messages. |
| Failed Server Access Attempts | The number of times the secondary RADIUS server and the access server failed to exchange messages. |

* These failures are local failures only and are not attributed to the RADIUS server.

Monitoring RADIUS During Login

To monitor the port login process during login, define the following values and then reboot the access server.

Xyplex>> DEFINE RADIUS LOGGING ENABLED Xyplex>> DEFINE SERVER ACCOUNTING ENTRIES <1-1000> Xyplex>> DEFINE SERVER VERBOSE ACCOUNTING ENABLED Xyplex>> DEFINE SERVER VERBOSE PRIORITY 7

Outbound Port Security

The Outbound Port Security feature allows you to enable the RADIUS, Kerberos, SecurID, or simple port password security features on remote or dynamic ports.

Outbound Port Security allows you to:

- Restrict access to telephone lines that connect to remote locations. It prevents the unauthorized use of dial-out lines and provides a monitoring trial (provided you have accounting enabled).
- Prevent unauthorized access to an async port of a device from LAN users.

Without this feature, these security mechanisms do not apply to remote or dynamic ports. You can enable only one security mechanism on a port. To enable the Outbound Port Security feature, use the following command:

DEFINE/SET PORT [port-list] OUTBOUNDSECURITY ENABLED

The default setting for this command is ENABLED. This is a privileged command.

Radius Callback (Dialback)

Radius Callback (Dialback) provides automatic dialback capability to users logging into a Xyplex port. The following actions occur during a typical callback (Dialback) sequence:

- 1. The user dials into the Xyplex port and enters the Radius username and password information.
- 2. If the username/password are authenticated by the Radius host, the connecting modems hang up.
- 3. The Dialback process calls the originating modem.
- 4. The Radius username prompt appears again.

5. You must re-enter the same username. If the usernames match, the connection continues.

If the user enters a username that does not match the first one, the port is automatically logged out.

Callback Modes

Support is provided for Radius Callback (Dialback) in the following modes:

- Callback-Login consists of a dialback followed by a connection to a dedicated host specified in the Radius users file.
- Callback-Framed-User consists of a dialback followed by PPP negotiation with the Xyplex Access Server.
- Livingston V1.16 and all versions of Merit send back a Framed-Compression = None if Framed-Compression = Van-Jacobson-TCP-IP has not been included in the user's entry in the Users file.

Xyplex access server code does not flag Framed-Compression as unsupported and allows authentication to continue.

Callback-Login Parameters

Parameters for Callback-login are specified in the Radius users file. The following shows a typical Callback-Login entry in the users file.

```
bob Password = "secret"
   Service-Type = Callback-Login-User,
   Login-IP-Host = 140.210.211.99,
   Login-Service = Telnet
```

In this example, bob is the username, secret is the password. The Service-Type is Callback-Login-User. The Login-IP-Host is IP address for the host machine. The Login-service is Telnet.

NOTE: The Service-Type must be Callback-Login-User for Livingston Radius implementations (as opposed to Login-User for nondialback logins). For Merit Radius implementations Callback-Login is used for dialback and Login is used for non-dialback logins. Refer to the radius dictionary file for specific information.

Callback-Framed User Mode

Parameters for Callback-Framed User Mode are specified in the Radius users file. The following shows a typical Callback-Framed User entry in the users file.

```
sue Password = "secret"
   Service-Type = Callback-Framed-User,
   Framed-Protocol = PPP
   Framed-IP-Address = 140.210.211.99,
   Framed-Compression = Van-Jacobson-TCP-IP
```

In this example, sue is the username, secret is the password. The Service-Type is Callback-Framed-User. The Framed-Protocol is PPP. The IP Address to use remotely for PPP is 140.210.211.99. The Framed-Compression type is Van-Jacobson-TCP-IP.

NOTE: The Service-Type must be Callback-Framed-User for Livingston Radius implementations (as opposed to Framed-User for non-dialback logins). For Merit Radius implementations Callback-Framed is used for dialback and Framed is used for non-dialback logins. Refer to the radius dictionary file for specific information.

Configuration Tips

Follow these tips and guidelines to configure Radius Callback:

- Dialback provides you with two configuration choices. You can
 - define dialback on the port along with Radius and then limit the users who connect to this port to do Radius and dialback
 - just define Radius on the port.

The Radius callback software automatically enables dialback on the port, for that login session only, upon seeing the "Callback" string in the radius users file. If you choose to configure this way, the port is still available for regular Radius interactive users (Note: The Radius Spec does not provide for support of Callback (Dialback) for interactive users).

- The port must be set to access "dynamic".
- The Dialback process connects to the originating modem. In testing, it has taken up to 25 seconds for the reconnection to occur, once the re-dial has taken place. By default the dialback timeout is set at 20 seconds. Xyplex Networks suggests that you reset it to at least 25 seconds.

To reset the dialback timeout, enter

define port port-number dialback timeout 25

- The dialback login script should include the #pause 5. This line must appear before the line #atdt.
- To display Dialback-Login or Dialback-Framed User login information, set the accounting log to verbose priority 7.

• The modem attached to the COM port of the PC must be set to answer mode. Most modems from the factory have auto-answer disabled. This means that the modem will not answer an incoming call.

To enable auto-answer (on most Hayes compatible modems), you need to issue an ats0=1 (or higher). This sets the modem to answer after 1 ring. Save the configuration on the modem. For additional information refer to the documentation that accompanied your modem.

Supported Platforms

Radius Callback (Dialback) is supported on:

- Chameleon, V4.6
- Stampede Remote Office ,V2.0, with Connect dialog box enabled (although Xyplex Networks has officially ended its support for Stampede Remote Office as of V6.0.3)

These platforms provides a terminal(tty) window that stays active after the first dialback hangup occurs thereby allowing the login user to be prompted for the second Enter username prompt.

Unsupported Platforms

Radius Callback (Dialback) is not supported on:

- Windows' 95 Dial-Up Networking
- FTP Software OnNet2.0

Windows' 95 Dial-Up Networking and FTP Software OnNet2.0 do not keep a terminal(tty)window active, and there is no apparent option to keep it active, after the modem hangs up to perform dialback. Windows 95 and OnNet 2.0 consider this a disconnection and end the session. This prevents the login user from receiving the second Enter username prompt.

Unsupported Attributes

The Radius CallBack (Dialback) software included in V6.0.4 upgrade does not support

- Callback-Number
- Callback-ID

PPP Negotiations When a Port Has PPP and RADIUS Enabled

On a port with PPP, RADIUS, and an IDLE TIMEOUT enabled, the IDLE TIMEOUT begins counting down as soon as the port detects a modem signal.

Supported RADIUS Authentication Attributes

Some attributes appear in start records and the majority appear in stop records (a few also appear in acct-on and acct-off records). RADIUS allows most authentication and configuration attributes to be logged.

NOTE: These attributes will not be logged if RADIUS Accounting is set to *LIMITED* instead of *ENABLED*.

Limited vs Enabled

If ENABLED is the selected option, all supported attributes are displayed in the log. When LIMITED is the selected option, only the required attributes are displayed in the log. The following table shows the RADIUS attributes that are available for RADIUS Authentication.

| | Attribute Name | Description | Allowed |
|----|--------------------|--|--------------------|
| | | | |
| 01 | User-Name | Name of the user to authenticate. | 1 |
| 02 | User-Password | The password for the user to authenticate. | 0 - 1 |
| 03 | CHAP-Password | Indicates the CHAP challenge value found in the CHAP-Challenge attribute. | <mark>0</mark> - 1 |
| 04 | NAS-IP-Address | IP address associated with the Xyplex unit. | 0 - 1 |
| 05 | NAS-Port | Port or circuit number associated with the request. | 0 - 1 |
| 06 | Service-Type | Type of service allowed for the connection. See section titled <i>Assigning a Service Type</i> . | 0 - 1 |
| 07 | Framed-Protocol | Used with a framed service type. Indicates the type of framed access. | 0 - 1 |
| 08 | Framed-IP-Address | The address to be configured for the user. | 0 - 1 |
| 09 | Framed-IP-Netmask | The IP Netmask to be configured for the user when the user is a router to the network. | 0 - 1 |
| 11 | Filter-ID | The name of the filter list for the user. | 0+ |
| 13 | Framed-Compression | The compression protocol for the circuit. | 0+ |
| 14 | Login-IP-Host | Indicates the system to which to connect the user, when the Login-Service Attribute is included. | 0+ |
| 15 | Login-Service | Indicates the service to use to connect the user to the login host. | 0 - 1 |

| Table 19 - RADIUS S | Supported | Attributes |
|---------------------|-----------|------------|
|---------------------|-----------|------------|

| 16 | Login-Port | Indicates the TCP port to which to connect the user, when the Login- Service Attribute is present. | 0 - 1 |
|----|-------------------------------|--|-------|
| 18 | Reply-Message | Indicates text that may be displayed to the user. | 0+ |
| 23 | Framed-IPX-Network | The IPX Network number to be configured for the user. | 0 - 1 |
| 24 | State (challenge/response) | Sent by the server to the client in an Access-Challenge, and must be sent unmodified from the client to the server in any Access-Request reply. | 0 - 1 |
| 25 | Class | Sent by the server to the client in an Accept request. | 0+ |
| 27 | Session-Timeout | The login duration for the circuit. | 0 - 1 |
| 28 | Idle-Timeout | Idle time allowed for a port. | 0 - 1 |
| 32 | NAS-Identifier | The ID that identifies the Xyplex unit to the RADIUS server. | 0 - 1 |
| 34 | Login-LAT-Service | Indicates the system with which the user is to be connected by LAT. | 0 - 1 |
| 35 | Login-LAT-Node | Indicates the Node with which the user is to be automatically connected by LAT. | 0 - 1 |
| 60 | CHAP-Challenge | | 0 - 1 |
| 61 | NAS-Port-Type | The type of port or circuit being used. The valid values are: 0 - Asynchronous | 0 - 1 |

KEY:

0

This attribute MUST NOT be present in packet. Zero or more instances of this attribute can be present in packet. Zero or one instance of this attribute can be present in packet. **0**+

0-1

1 Exactly one instance of this attribute MUST be present in packet.

Allowed - Number of attributes allowed in a request from the RADIUS client to the **RADIUS server**.

Defining RADIUS Accounting

This section describes the new remote access user accounting feature, called RADIUS Accounting. RADIUS Accounting is a client/server account logging scheme that allows you to log user account information to a remote server in a per client file. The file or record can contain information such as the user who logged in, the duration of the session, and the number of bytes/packets that were processed by the Access Server.

The use of RADIUS Accounting solves the problems associated with local storage of large numbers of records. It also provides a method for billing customers for account usage.

NOTE: RADIUS Accounting is a developing standard that is *vendor extensible by design*, including a provision for vendor specific extensions. This allows for greater expandability of accounting information in the future.

At initialization time, the system sends a RADIUS Accounting query out to the network (even if RADIUS Accounting is disabled). The system queries the DNS server on every RADIUS request for IP resolution. If the DNS server is down at initialization time, then another query is done for each authentication if the RADIUS IP resolved address is 0.0.0.

For further information about RADIUS Accounting, refer to *Radius Accounting RFC 2059* (April 1997) for the requirements of the RADIUS implementation.

RADIUS Accounting Prerequisites

To use RADIUS Accounting on an access server, you need the following:

• Support for Internet Draft RADIUS Accounting on a RADIUS Authentication Server in the network. (This is usually done with portable code for the RADIUS Accounting feature installed on the RADIUS Authentication Server.)

- Interoperation with a RADIUS server, such as a Merit RADIUS server.
- Minimum of 3 MB of memory.

Setting Up RADIUS Accounting

To setup RADIUS Accounting on your access server:

- 1. Make a copy of your parameter file. Xyplex Networks recommends that you copy the existing file to a file with an ".old" extension.
- 2. Insert the flash card containing the load image and reboot the access server.
- 3. Enable RADIUS on the access server, using the following command: define server radius enabled
- 4. Enable Xyplex Accounting at a priority level 7, using the following commands:

define server accounting entries 255 init delay 0 define server verbose accounting enabled define server verbose priority 7 define server radius logging enabled

Xyplex Accounting is independent of RADIUS Accounting and therefore able to log all events including failures. This allows you to troubleshoot RADIUS authentication and RADIUS accounting problems.

5. Verify that the parameter state has gone to "current," using the following command:

monitor parameter server

6. Reboot the access server.

init delay 0

Defining a UDP Port Number

To define a UDP port number used by the RADIUS client and server for communication, use the following command:

DEFINE/SET [SERVER] RADIUS ACCOUNTING PORT n

The default value is 1646.

Defining the RADIUS Accounting Logging Attempts Limits

To define the number of times that the access server attempts to log the accounting record to both the primary and secondary servers before giving up and failing, use the following command:

DEFINE/SET [SERVER] RADIUS ACCOUNTING ATTEMPTS n

A backoff algorithm is implemented to delay for a period of time between these attempts. The default value is 5 attempts.

Defining RADIUS Accounting for Port Logins and Logouts

To enable RADIUS Accounting for port logins and logouts, use the following command:

DEFINE/SET PORT n RADIUS ACCOUNTING {ENABLED|DISABLED} LOG PORT n

Note that even though it is enabled, nothing is logged until an authentication protocol is enabled.
RADIUS Accounting Client Operation

During the authentication process, when RADIUS Accounting is enabled on an appropriate port, an accounting request (a start request) is sent before login to the RADIUS Accounting process begins. As a result of the start request, a start record containing the following is created for each user session:

- User-name
- NAS-Identifier
- NAS-IP-Address
- NAS-Port
- NAS-Port-Type
- Service-Type
- Acct-Status-Type
- Acct-Delay-Time
- Acct-Session-Id
- Acct-Authentication

The majority of the accounting record information appears in the *stop* record. The stop record is created when the port is logged out, provided that a matching start record was previously sent. The information in the stop record includes everything in the start record, and additional information, such as session time and bytes/packets transferred.

There are two special records that are logged for RADIUS Accounting.

- Accounting-on. This record is logged when the access server is first booted.
- Accounting-off. This record is logged, if possible, when the access server is shutdown.

These records only contain the Session-Id, Acct-Status-Type, and NAS-IP-Address. Since these accounting requests only relate to the access server using the protocol and not to accounting on a specific port, they are only attempted if the RADIUS protocol is enabled.

Accounting Retry and Backoff Timer Process

RADIUS Accounting has built-in timeout and retry capabilities. The RADIUS Accounting feature logs the record to the remote server, when possible. However, sending requests constantly and continually trying to process them should be avoided. Therefore, this implementation of RADIUS Accounting uses a two-part retry and backoff algorithm based on the following configurable controls:

- The first part of the retry mechanism directly affects the communication between the RADIUS client on the NAS and each RADIUS server. It is the same retry functionality that RADIUS authentication uses. The NAS client waits a configurable amount of time (*Request Timeout* in seconds) for an acknowledgment after it sends an accounting request to a server. If the timeout period occurs, it retries the server again. After three configurable "server retries", it proceeds to the next (secondary) server in the list. The secondary server is then tried in the same way, provided that the servers are configured. RADIUS Servers configured on the NAS with the default value 0.0.0.0 are not used.
- The second piece of the retry mechanism involves the available primary and secondary RADIUS servers. After sending requests to all the configured servers and failing to get a timely response, the request waits a period of time before starting over with the first server in the list and re-sending the request. The period of time that it waits is based on the configurable *request timeout* and the number of attempts that have been made to send this request to all the servers.

This delay period starts with a value based on the request timeout (*start delay = request timeout*) and increases with each successive attempt by an exponential factor (*new delay = previous delay * 2* (attempt #)) up to a maximum backoff factor of 16 or 2 (4th attempt). This delay value remains for all remaining log attempts. The maximum number of log attempts (*Attempts to Log Record*), or number of times all the servers are tried, is also configurable.

The following table provides an example of the retry and delay time process. In this example, the NAS client uses a timeout value of 5 seconds, an attempt limit of 6, and both primary and secondary servers. With these values the delay between attempts is:

| Log Attempt | Total of all Timeouts for Both Servers | Delay Time After This Log Attempt | Total Wait Time Before Next Log Attempt |
|----------------|--|--------------------------------------|---|
| 1 | 30 secs = 2 * | 10 secs | 40 secs = 30 + |
| | 3 * 5 secs | | 10 |
| 2 | 30 secs = 2 * | 40 secs | 70 secs = 30 + |
| | 3 * 5 secs | | 40 |
| 3 | 30 secs = 2 * | 5.33 mins ≅ | 5.83 mins ≅ 350 |
| | 3 * 5 secs | 320 secs | secs = 30 + 320 |
| 4 | 30 secs = 2 * | 1.4222 hrs ≅ | 1.431 hrs ≅ |
| | 3 * 5 secs | 5120 secs | 5150 secs = 30 + |
| | | | 5120 |
| 5 | 30 secs = 2 * | 1.4222 hrs ≅ | 1.431 hrs ≅ |
| | 3 * 5 secs | 5120 secs | 5150 secs = 30 + |
| | | | 5120 |
| 6 | 30 secs = 2 * | No delay | Only waits (30 |
| | 3 * 5 secs | after last | secs) on last |
| | | attempt | attempt |

Canceling RADIUS Requests

Once a RADIUS request is added to a respective process queues, you may want to "cancel" the request and prevent the RADIUS client from retrying a server that cannot or does not respond. To do this use the following command:

CLEAR/PURGE SERVER RADIUS {AUTHENTICATION | ACCOUNTING} $\{n | ALL\}$

The request id, '*n*', is obtained by viewing information in the server accounting log on the access server, provided that server accounting and RADIUS logging (not RADIUS account logging) are enabled. All outstanding requests may be eliminated if 'ALL' is specified.

Viewing RADIUS Accounting Information

To display the access server's RADIUS server and accounting information, use the following command:

Show Server RADIUS Accounting

| Xyplex>> show server RADIUS accounting | | | | | |
|--|------------|---------------------|----------|--|---|
| MX1620 V6.0.2 Rom 480000 H | W 00.00.00 |) Lat Protocol V5.2 | | Uptime: 0 00:00:49 11 Apr 1996 16:11:44 | |
| RADIUS Primary Server: | | KAB | | | |
| Resolved Address: | 140.179.2 | 100.200 | Secret: | CONFIGURED | |
| RADIUS Secondary Server: | | NONE | | | |
| Resolved Address: | 0.0.0.0 | IVCINE, | Secret: | DEFAULT | |
| | | | | | |
| Accounting Port Number: | | 1646 | | Request Timeout (sec): | 5 |
| Next Available Session #: | 2d000002 | | Attempts | to Log Record: 3 | |
| RADIUS Server Retries: | | 3 | | | |
| RADIUS Acct Ports Enabled: | 16, 18-19 | 9 | | | |
| | | | | | |
| Successful Acct Entries: | | 2 | | Failed Acct Entries: | 0 |
| Requests Waiting: | 0 | | | | |
| | | | _ | | |
| Server access attempts: | | Primary | Secondar | У | |
| Successful: | | 3 | 0 | | |
| Failed: | | 0 | 0 | | |
| | | | | | |
| Xvplex>> | | | | | |

The following list describes the individual fields in the Show Server window.

| RADIUS Primary Server | The server that is tried first for each |
|-----------------------|--|
| _ | authentication attempt. Valid values are text |
| | strings up to 51 ASCII characters specifying a DNS |
| | host name or a valid IP address. The default is no |
| | configured primary server or the null string "". |

| Primary Resolved Address | The IP address associated with the DNS name used for the Primary RADIUS server. The default value is the address 0.0.0.0. |
|----------------------------|---|
| RADIUS Secondary Server | The DNS name of the RADIUS server used when the primary RADIUS server is unavailable. The default value is "". |
| Secondary Resolved Address | The IP address associated with the DNS name used for the Secondary RADIUS server. The default value is the address 0.0.0.0. |
| Accounting Port Number | The UDP port that the RADIUS Accounting requests are transmitted and received from. The default value is 1646. |
| Request Timeout | The period of time between RADIUS client retransmissions to the server when trying to log an accounting record. It is the time that the access server waits for a reply from the RADIUS server. The default value is 5 seconds. |
| Next Available Session # | The next available session number used in the log record for the next port login. |
| Attempts to Log Record | The number of times that the access server attempts to log the accounting record to both the primary and secondary servers before giving up and failing. The default is 5 attempts. |
| RADIUS Server Retries | The number of times a particular server is tried. These tries are in succession for RADIUS accounting. The default value is 3. |
| RADIUS Acct Ports Enabled | A list of actual port numbers indicating the ports on the access server that have RADIUS Accounting enabled. |
| Successful Acct Entries | The number of successful log entries made to the RADIUS server. |
| Failed Acct Entries | The number of unsuccessful log entries made to the RADIUS server. The number of allowable log attempts has been exceeded and the access server has stopped trying to log the record. |

| Requests Waiting | The number of requests that are queued up at a given time waiting for a reply from the RADIUS server. Up to 300 of these outstanding requests can be buffered before records are lost. |
|-------------------------|--|
| Primary Server Access | The number of times the primary RADIUS server |
| Successes | and the client successfully exchanged messages. |
| Secondary Server Access | The number of times the secondary RADIUS server |
| Successes | and the client successfully exchanged messages. |
| Primary Server Access | The number of times the primary RADIUS server |
| Failures | and the client failed to exchange messages. |
| Secondary Server Access | The number of times the secondary RADIUS server |
| Failures | and the client failed to exchange messages. |

To display the access server's port characteristics, use the following command:

| Xyplex>> show port alt char | | | |
|-----------------------------|----------------|-------------------------|-------------|
| Port 2: rhw | | 05 Jan 1997 09:54:0 | 4 |
| Resolve Service: | Any_Lat | t DIR wait: | |
| Disabled | | | |
| Idle Timeout: | 0 | Typeahead Size: | 128 |
| SLIP Address: | N/A | SLIP Mask: | N/A |
| Remote SLIP Addr: | N/A | Default Session Mode: | Interactive |
| TCP Window Size: | 256 | Prompt: | X021812 |
| DCD Timeout: | N/A | Dialback Timeout: | N/A |
| Stop Bits: | N/A | Script Login: | Disabled |
| TCP Keepalive Timer: | N/A | Username Filtering: | None |
| Nested Menu: | Disabled | Nested Menu Top | Level: 0 |
| Command Size: | 132 | Clear Security Entries: | Disabled |
| Rlogin Transparent Mode: | N/A | Login Duration: | 0 |
| Xon Send Timer: | N/A | TCP Outbound Address: | 0.0.0.0 |
| SLIP AutoSend: | N/A | RADIUS Accounting: | Enabled |
| APD Autobaud: | Enabled | | |
| | | | |
| Username Prompt: | Enter username | > | |
| Password Prompt: | Enter user pas | sword> | |

SHOW PORT ALT CHARACTERISTICS

RADIUS Attribute Idle-Timeout

When the RADIUS attribute "Idle-Timeout" is given a value of zero, which means the idle timeout on the port is disabled, the bogus syslog message "invalid entry of zero" is logged. A default Idle-Timeout value is now accepted and correctly processed by RADIUS.

RADIUS Accounting Attributes

The following table shows the RADIUS attributes that are available for RADIUS Accounting.

| | Attribute Name | Description | Allo wed |
|----|--------------------|---|-------------|
| | | | |
| 01 | User-Name | Name of the user to authenticate. | 1 |
| 04 | NAS-IP-Address | IP address associated with the Xyplex unit. | 0 - 1 |
| 05 | NAS-Port | Port or circuit number associated with the request. | 0 - 1 |
| 06 | Service-Type | Type of service allowed for the connection. See section titled <i>Assigning a Service Type</i> . | 0 - 1 |
| 07 | Framed-Protocol | Used with a framed service type. Indicates the type of framed access. | 0 - 1 |
| 08 | Framed-IP-Address | Address to be configured for the user. | 0 - 1 |
| 09 | Framed-IP-Netmask | The IP Netmask to be configured for the user when the user is a router to the network. | 0 - 1 |
| 11 | Filter-ID | The name of the filter list for the user. | 0+ |
| 13 | Framed-Compression | The compression protocol for the circuit. | 0+ |
| 14 | Login-IP-Host | Indicates the system to which to connect the user, when the Login- Service Attribute is included. | 0+ |

| Table 20 - RADIUS Su | upported / | Accounting | Attributes |
|----------------------|------------|------------|------------|
| | | | |

| - | | | |
|----|--------------------|--|--------------|
| 15 | Login-Service | Indicates the service to use to connect the user to the login host. | 0 - 1 |
| 16 | Login-Port | Indicates the TCP port to which to connect the user, when the Login- Service Attribute is present. | 0 - 1 |
| 23 | Framed-IPX-Network | The IPX Network number to be configured for the user. | 0 - 1 |
| 25 | Class | Sent by the server to the client in an Accept request. | 0+ |
| 27 | Session-Timeout | The login duration for the circuit. | 0 - 1 |
| 28 | Idle-Timeout | Idle time allowed for a port. | 0 - 1 |
| 32 | NAS-Identifier | The ID that identifies the Xyplex unit to the RADIUS server. | 0 - 1 |
| 34 | Login-LAT-Service | Indicates the system with which the user is to be connected by LAT. | 0 - 1 |
| 35 | Login-LAT-Node | Indicates the Node with which the user is to be automatically connected by LAT. | 0 - 1 |
| 40 | Acct-Status-Type | Type of accounting record: 1 - start record 2 - stop record 7 - acct-on 8 - acct-off | 1 |
| 41 | Acct-Delay-Time | Any delays, measured in seconds, in transmitting to the server. | 0 - 1 |
| 42 | Acct-Input-Octets | The number of octets inbound to the port or circuit. Only in stop records if greater than 0. | 0 - 1 |
| 43 | Acct-Output-Octets | The number of octets outbound to the port or circuit. Only in stop records if greater than 0. | 0 - 1 |
| 44 | Acct-Session-Id | Identifies paired logging records in a session (acct-on/acct-off, start/stop) | 1 |

| 45 | Acct-Authentic | Identifies the type of authentication used prior to the initial accounting record. Valid Authentication Types are: 1 - RADIUS 2 - Local 3 - Remote (refers to Kerberos or SecurID) | 0 - 1 |
|----|----------------------|--|-------|
| 46 | Acct-Session-Time | Time in seconds of user login through the port or circuit. | 0 - 1 |
| 47 | Acct-Input-Packets | The number of inbound packets to the port or circuit. | 0 - 1 |
| 48 | Acct-Output-Packets | The number of outbound packets to the port or circuit. | 0 - 1 |
| 49 | Acct-Terminate-Cause | The reason why the session was terminated. | 0 - 1 |
| 61 | NAS-Port-Type | The type of port or circuit being used. The valid values are: 0 - Asynchronous | 0 - 1 |

KEY:

0

This attribute MUST NOT be present in packet. Zero or more instances of this attribute can be present in packet. **0**+

0-1

Zero or one instance of this attribute can be present in packet. Exactly one instance of this attribute MUST be present in packet. 1

Allowed - Number of attributes allowed in a request from the RADIUS client to the RADIUS server.

RADIUS Log Messages

The following table lists the RADIUS-related server accounting messages.

| Log Message Symbol | Log Message Text |
|------------------------------------|---|
| RAD_LOG_A_SERVER_FAILURE | "A server was accessed, but others failed" |
| RAD_LOG_ACCOUNTING_FAILURE | "Failed - No request sent (acct) - NOT LOGGED" |
| RAD_LOG_ACCT_DISABLED_NO_CLA SS | "RADIUS acct is disabled. Attribute ignored." |
| RAD_LOG_ACCT_NO_MEMORY | "No memory available (acct) - NOT LOGGED" |
| RAD_LOG_ACCT_NO_MORE_ATTEMP TS | "Exceeded # of attempts to log the record" |
| RAD_LOG_ACCT_NO_REPLY | "No reply to request (acct) - NOT LOGGED" |
| RAD_LOG_ACCT_REQ_NOT_ALLOWE D | "Accounting request not allowed" |
| RAD_LOG_ACCT_REQUEST_ID | "Request id (acct): %d" |
| RAD_LOG_ACCT_REQUEST_TIMEOUT | "Request (acct) timed out - Id: %d" |
| RAD_LOG_ACCT_RETRY_REQUEST | "Retrying request (acct) - attempt #%d" |
| RAD_LOG_ACCT_SEND_FAILURE | "Failed to send packet (acct)" |
| RAD_LOG_ACCT_SEND_SUCCESS | "Sent packet (acct) to %s" |
| RAD_LOG_ACCT_START_DELAY_TIM ER | "Delay timer set for %d seconds" |
| RAD_LOG_ACCT_STARTSEND_SUC CESS | "Sent packet (act-start) to %s" |

RAD_LOG_ACCT_STOP_SEND_SUCC "Sent packet (act-stop) to %s" ESS RAD_LOG_ACCT_WAIT_TO_RETRY "Waiting to retry request (acct)" "All RADIUS (acct) ids used - wait RAD_LOG_ALL_ACCT_IDS_USED to send" "All server accesses failed" RAD_LOG_ALL_SERVERS_FAIL RAD_LOG_ATTRIB_CREATE_ERR "Error storing an attribute" RAD_LOG_ATTRIB_FAILED "Failed on attribute - %d" RAD_LOG_AUTH_CONTINUE_ON_FAI "Trying another server on auth failure" L RAD_LOG_AUTH_FAILED "Authentication failure - logging out" "No memory available (auth) -RAD_LOG_AUTH_NO_MEMORY logging out" RAD LOG AUTH REQUEST ID "Request id (auth): %d" RAD_LOG_AUTH_REQUEST_TIMEOU "Request (auth) timed out - Id: Т %d" RAD_LOG_AUTH_SEND_FAILURE "Failed to send packet (auth)" RAD_LOG_AUTH_SEND_SUCCESS "Sent packet (auth) to %s" "Invalid attribute for RAD_LOG_BAD_ATTRIB_FOR_CONFIG configuration" "Invalid attribute length" RAD_LOG_BAD_ATTRIB_VAL_LEN RAD_LOG_BAD_ATTRIB_VALUE "Invalid/unsupported attribute value" RAD_LOG_CANCEL_ACCT_REQUEST "Request canceled (acct) - Id: %d" RAD_LOG_CANCEL_AUTH_REQUEST "Request canceled (auth) - Id: %d" RAD_LOG_CHAP_REQUEST "Challenge Authentication request"

| RAD_LOG_CONFIG_FAILED | "Configuration failure - logging out" |
|-------------------------------------|--|
| RAD_LOG_CONFIG_LIST_ERR | "Failed to build configuration list" |
| RAD_LOG_GOT_ACCEPT | "Received packet (Accept) from %s" |
| RAD_LOG_GOT_ACCT_RESPONSE | "Received response (acct) from %s" |
| RAD_LOG_GOT_ACCT_START_RESPO NSE | "Received response (acct_start) from %s" |
| RAD_LOG_GOT_ACCT_STOP_RESPON SE | "Received response (acct_stop) from %s" |
| RAD_LOG_GOT_CHALLENGE | "Received packet (challenge) from %s" |
| RAD_LOG_GOT_REJECT | "Received packet (Reject) from %s" |
| RAD_LOG_INVALID_AUTH | " Invalid Authenticator - packet code %d" |
| RAD_LOG_INVALID_AUTH_REJ | " Invalid Authenticator - mismatched secret?" |
| RAD_LOG_INVALID_PACKET | "Received invalid packet from %s" |
| RAD_LOG_INVALID_PKT_CODE | " Invalid/unsupported packet code - %d" |
| RAD_LOG_INVALID_PKT_ID | " Unexpected RADIUS packet id - %d" |
| RAD_LOG_MISSING_REQ_FRAMED_P ROT | "Missing required framed protocol" |
| RAD_LOG_MISSING_REQ_LAT_PARA MS | "Missing a required LAT parameter" |

| RAD_LOG_MISSING_REQ_LOGIN_SER VICE | "Missing required login service" |
|---------------------------------------|--|
| RAD_LOG_MISSING_REQ_SERVICE_T YPE | "Missing required service type" |
| RAD_LOG_MISSING_REQ_TELNET_PA RAMS | "Missing a required TELNET parameter" |
| RAD_LOG_NO_PACKET_MEM | "No memory for request packet" |
| RAD_LOG_NO_PASSWORD | " No password specified" |
| RAD_LOG_NO_REC_BUFF_MEM | "No memory for receive buffer" |
| RAD_LOG_NO_USERNAME | " No username specified" |
| RAD_LOG_PAP_REQUEST | " Password Authentication request" |
| RAD_LOG_POLICY_FAILED | "Policy failure - logging out" |
| RAD_LOG_SCRIPT_FAILURE | "RADIUS script execution failure" |
| RAD_LOG_SECRET_CHANGED | "Secret was changed - server %d" |
| RAD_LOG_SEND_CHAL_REPLY | "Sent packet (response) to %s" |
| RAD_LOG_SERVICE_HINT_USED | " Service type hint : %s" |
| RAD_LOG_SERVICE_NOT_CHOSEN | "Service not type chosen" |
| RAD_LOG_TOO_MANY_PENDING_RE QUESTS | "Too many pending requests (acct) - NOT LOGGED" |
| RAD_LOG_UNKNOWN_COM_ATTR | "Unexpected common attribute - %d" |
| RAD_LOG_UNKNOWN_RAD_ATTR | "Unexpected RADIUS attribute - %d" |

Getting Started - Kerberos

The basic steps for setting up Kerberos authentication follow:

- 1. Set up the Kerberos authentication servers.
- 2. Enable Kerberos authentication.
- 3. Configure Kerberos settings at the access server.

These steps are described in the following sections.

Set Up the Kerberos Authentication Servers

Follow the instructions in the documentation supplied with the Kerberos software to install and set up the Kerberos Master and Server hosts. Kerberos, the username can be a maximum of 119 characters (bytes), consisting of three sections of a maximum of 39 bytes each in the form "username.instance@realm." All displays which show the username continue to print only the first 16 characters.

Enable Kerberos Authentication

You can set up an access server to authenticate users through either Kerberos Version 4 or 5. Only one version can be running on the access server. Use this command to enable Kerberos Version 4:

DEFINE/SET SERVER KERBEROS FOUR ENABLED

Use this command to enable Kerberos Version 5:

DEFINE/SET SERVER KERBEROS FIVE ENABLED

After issuing the command, and after the unit has saved its parameters, *reboot the access server*. (Issue the SHOW PARAMETER SERVER command to verify that the parameter server is "current.")

Configure Kerberos Settings

Use the following commands to set up the access server for Kerberos authentication:

- Specify the IP address of the Kerberos Master host; default: 0.0.0.0.
 DEFINE/SET SERVER KERBEROS MASTER *ip-address*
- Specify the IP address of the primary Kerberos Server. Default: 0.0.0.0.
 DEFINE/SET SERVER KERBEROS PRIMARY SERVER *ip-address*
- 3. Specify the IP address of the alternate Kerberos Server; default: 0.0.0.0. DEFINE/SET SERVER KERBEROS SECONDARY SERVER *ip-address*
- 4. Specify the name of the local Kerberos realm. A valid "realm-name" is a case-sensitive string of up to 40 characters, or NONE. Default: NONE. DEFINE/SET SERVER KERBEROS REALM "realm-name"
- 5. Specify whether the server supports Kerberos; default: NONE. DEFINE/SET SERVER KERBEROS SECURITY [LOGIN]

[NONE]

- Specify the number of times the server queries (contacts) each Kerberos Server host. You can specify a *query-limit* from 1 - 16. The default is 3.
 DEFINE/SET SERVER KERBEROS QUERY LIMIT *query-limit*
- 7. Specify the Kerberos Password for the specified ports(s). When you change a password, you are prompted to enter the old and new passwords.

DEFINE PORT port-number USER KERBEROS PASSWORD

Kerberos Error Messages

The Kerberos Error Message feature allows you to specify the text in the Kerberos 739 error message. This error message appears when Kerberos authentication fails due to a communications failure. To specify the text in the Kerberos 739 error message, use the following command:

DEFINE/SET SERVER KERBEROS ERROR MESSAGE "character-string"

The "*character-string*" variable can contain up to 132 ASCII characters. The character string must be enclosed in quotes. This is a privileged command.

The default character string is "Please contact your system administrator."

Idle Time Causing Kerberos Error 62 (Bad Password) and Error 37 (Clock Skew Too Great)

This occurs after the user has entered a username, and then sits idle at the "Enter User Password>" prompt for more then 5 minutes. This causes the access server software to use incorrect time information when communicating with the Kerberos authentication server. The Kerberos authentication server then fails to authenticate the user because the access server's time is not synchronized with the authentication server's time.

The access server now uses the current time when sending authentication information to the Kerberos authentication server.

PPP User Authentication via Kerberos

Verify that Kerberos is setup correctly on the server and that it is operational. Setup for master and primary server and enable on the server ports. Check the Kerberos host to match realm name to access server. If one access server is authenticating correctly using Kerberos 4, but another server is not authenticating on that same server, then check the following:

- User is properly connecting to the server via PPP
- User name prompt is presented
- Userid is entered
- Password prompt is presented

If a valid password is entered, but the password is not authenticating, then the solution is to add the REALM address to the access server. On the server, "Where" means the realm-name which specifies the name of the Kerberos realm to which the Master and Server hosts are associated. Valid values are text strings of up to 40 ASCII characters long. NONE specifies that no Kerberos Realm exists for this server. Kerberos REALM is case sensitive and needs to be encased in quotes as follows: DEFINE SERVER KERBEROS REALM "realm_name".

Logins Without Kerberos

Xyplex correctly displays the "Logins without Kerberos" field for a port that has either Kerberos or PAP-Kerberos and Auto-Protocol Detect (APD) enabled on it.

This is supported in software version V6-0-2 S2 and greater. PPP PAP -Kerberos incremented the "Logins without Kerberos" counter once for each of the carriage return (CR) required for APD. With Kerberos enabled on a port, the "Show Server Kerberos" screens displayed that there were (n) "Logins without Kerberos" when a single user logs onto a port once with the APD interactive enabled. When ADP is disabled on the port, then the counters are correct and one "Successful Login" and 0 "Logins without Kerberos" is displayed.

Getting Started - SecurID Client Setup

The basic steps for setting up SecurID clients follow:

- 1. Set up the SecurID client at the UNIX host.
- 2. Install the Xyplex load image that contains the SecurID client.
- 3. Enable the SecurID feature at the access server.
- 4. Define server-related SecurID settings.
- 5. Set up ports to require SecurID authentication.

The following sections describe each step.

Configuring the SecurID Client at the UNIX host

Use the procedures described in the ACE/Server Manual from Security Dynamics Technologies, Inc. to configure the access server as a SecurID client. The main activities are:

- Installing the server software and getting it running
- Specifying clients

You must do some planning before you set up the SecurID client on an access server. The values you specify for certain settings at the ACE/Server(s) must match values for the same settings at the access server. This is covered in more detail in "Define SecurID Settings". SecurID authentication allows a username of up to 32 characters. All displays which show the username only display the first 16 characters.

Xyplex Network's SecurID client software is based on V1.1 of the ACE/Server software supplied by Security Dynamics Technologies, Inc. The SecurID client software operates with ACE/Server host running ACE/Server software V1.1, or later.

Install Software that Supports the SecurID Client

Use the standard Xyplex software installation procedure, as described in the *Software Installation Guide* for your load server type (UNIX, VAX/VMS, or Xyplex load servers). After installing the software at the load server, or on a local memory card or diskette, reboot the server so that it runs the new load image.

Enable the SecurID Feature

To enable:

1. Enable the SecurID feature at the access server through this command:

Xyplex>> define server securid enabled

The server responds with a message similar to:

-705- Change leaves approximately *nnnnn* bytes free. If you are prompted with a "Not enough memory" warning, do not reboot, but disable the feature. Disable the Define Server Securid.

- 2. Enter the Show Parameter Server display.
- 3. Make sure that the parameters are current (i.e., SecurID is enabled).
- 4. Reboot the Access Server for the changes to take effect.

Xyplex>> init delay 0

Define SecurID Settings

At the access server, you must define the settings that enable the server to communicate with ACE/Servers, and which control the way in which they communicate. Most of the settings that you define apply only at the SecurID client. However, the values for the acm_port and use_des (Server SecurID Encryption Mode) settings must match the values you assign at the ACE/Servers.

Define the Servers

Xyplex>> define server securid servern *IP-address* Xyplex>> define server securid servern *domain-name*

The servern value refers to SERVER0 through SERVER4; the default value for SERVER0 is the domain name SECURID_0. These values specify the domain names for the primary and alternate ACE/Servers. If the first ACE/Server does not respond to an authentication request, the access server requests authentication from the alternate servers, in order, until it receives a response. If no ACE/Servers respond, the access server repeats the process, until it reaches the limit specified by the Server SecurID ACM Max Retries setting.

When a user enters a domain name in an outbound connection request, the server resolves (matches) the domain name to an IP address and applies the result to the security table. The server checks its own domain name database first, and then searches the domain name server database. (A domain name server is a device that matches domain names to IP addresses.)

ACM Base Timeout

Xyplex>> define server securid acmbasetimeout value

This setting controls the interval between prompts for a PASSCODE. A valid *value* is a number between 1 and 10 seconds; the default is 3.

ACM Max Retries

Xyplex>> define server securid acmmaxretries value

This setting controls the number of times the access server tries to connect to the ACE/Servers in its list (SERVER0 through SERVER4) when authenticating a user. A valid *value* is a number between 1 and 10; the default is 5.

ACM_Port

Xyplex>> define server securid acm_port udp-port-number

This setting specifies the destination UDP port number to use when sending information to one or more ACE/Servers (SERVER0 through SERVER4), when authenticating a user. A valid *udp-port-number* is a number between 1 and 1023; the default is 755. This value must match with the acm_port parameter at the ACE/Server(s) that the access server uses.

Query Limit

Xyplex>> define server securid query limit *limit* This setting controls the number of times that a user can enter a PASSCODE incorrectly before the access server logs out the port. A valid *value* is a number between 1 and 10; the default is 3.

Encryption Mode

Xyplex>> define server securid encryption mode *value* The *value* you specify controls the type of encryption that the access server uses when it communicates with an ACEserver. SecurID supports two encryption methods:

- DES (Defense Encryption Standard)
- SDI BLOCK CIPHER (proprietary Security Dynamics Technologies, Inc. encryption method).

The default method is DES.

Configure Ports to Require SecurID Authentication

After defining the server settings, use this command to specify which ports require SecurID authentication:

DEFINE PORT port-list SECURID ENABLED

SecurID Failure

A port with SecurID, DYNAMIC ACCESS, and APD does not prompt the user for the SecurID username or passcode. The user is correctly authenticated via SecurID.

SecurID - Entering New PIN Mode

Truncation of a 7 or 8 digit PIN number no longer occurs. The field length was changed to 16 digits. The 16-digit length was used because on a normal login, the user can potentially enter up to 16 digits (e.g., 8 for the PIN and 8 for the Passcode).

Show Server Securid Display

Carriage returns are not counted as logins.

Getting Started - Internet Security

The basic steps for setting up Internet Security are:

- 1. Enabling/Disabling Internet Security
- 2. Specify the IP Address
- 3. Specify the Security Mask
- 4. Define the Direction and Access settings

The following sections describe each step.

| Port-list | A port number or group of port numbers |
|---------------|---|
| IP address | The IP address associated with an entry |
| Security Mask | A security mask for the IP address, which can designate certain nodes within an address |
| Direction | Outbound (calls from the port to the network), or Inbound (calls from the network to the port) |
| Access | Allow or Deny |

Defining Internet Security Information for the Server

Internet Security is disabled by default. Use this command to enable it on a server-wide basis, or to disable it later:

```
DEFINE SERVER IP SECURITY [ENABLED] [DISABLED]
```

Port Security

Specify a full IP address — not an abbreviation or shorthand version. Valid IP addresses consist of four numbers, from 0 to 255, separated by periods. For example, 192.168.19.205 and 192.168.119.0 are both valid IP addresses. However, the abbreviation 192.168.19 is not valid.

DEFINE PORT port-list IP SECURITY security information

To define the port groups, use the following commands:

| SET | PORT | port-list | GROUPS | [group-list] | [DISABLED] |
|-----|------|-----------|--------|--------------|------------|
| | | | | | [ENABLED] |
| | | | | [ALL] | [DISABLED] |
| | | | | | [ENABLED] |
| | | | | | |

To define the port's IP Security, use the following commands:

DEFINE/SET PORT port-list IP SECURITY security info

Where the following is the *security-information*:

[INBOUND ALLOW] *IP-address* [MASK securmask][ENABLED][DISABLED]

[INBOUND DENY] *IP-address* [MASK secur-mask] [ENABLED][DISABLED]

[OUTBOUND ALLOW] *IP-address* [MASK securmask][ENABLED][DISABLED]

[OUTBOUND DENY] *IP-address* [MASK secur-mask] [ENABLED][DISABLED]

To define the port IP Security default, use the following commands: DEFINE PORT port-list IP SECURITY DEFAULT [INBOUND] [ALLOW] [DENY] [OUTBOUND] [ALLOW] To show the access server's IP security table: SHOW SERVER IP SECURITY To deny all connections from ALL sources out on the ethernet from connecting to the access server port 5: DEFINE PORT 5 IP SECURITY DEFAULT INBOUND DENY SET PORT 5 IP SECURITY DEFAULT INBOUND DENY To allow host 140.179.240.14 only to connect to access server port 5 across the LAN: DEFINE PORT 5 IP SECURITY INBOUND ALLOW 140.179.240.14 MASK 255.255.255.255 SET PORT 5 IP SECURITY INBOUND ALLOW 140.179.240.14 MASK 255.255.255.255 At this point only host 140.179.240.14 can telnet to access server port 5, all other host connections would be denied (this assumes remote or dynamic access is enabled on port 5). To deny the user on access server port 5 from connecting to any hosts on the

ethernet:

DEFINE PORT 5 IP SECURITY DEFAULT OUTBOUND DENY

SET PORT 5 IP SECURITY DEFAULT OUTBOUND DENY

To allow the user on access server port 5 to connect to host 140.179.240.14 only: DEFINE PORT 5 IP SECURITY OUTBOUND ALLOW 140.179.240.14 MASK 255.255.255.255 SET PORT 5 IP SECURITY OUTBOUND ALLOW 140.179.240.14 MASK 255.255.255.255

If the mask (in examples 2 and 4 above) was set to 255.255.0.0, it would allow connections from/to any host on the 140.179.xxx.xxx network only.

Specifying the Security Mask

A security mask specifies the portions of the IP address that the server uses to determine where to allow or deny connections. Like an IP subnet mask, a security mask has four segments of decimal numbers between 0 and 255, each separated by a period.

Example

The default outbound access for server ports on a LAN is Allow. You can create an entry in the security table that denies outbound calls from Port 4 to any node on the subnet 192.168.61.0 by using the security mask 255.255.255.0. You could then create another entry that allows outbound calls from the port to 192.168.61.5, by using the security mask 255.255.255.255.255.255. A user at Port 4 could then reach Node 192.168.61.5 but could not reach other nodes on the subnet because the security mask 255.255.255.255.255 is specific.

Direction and Access

The direction and access settings specify how the server restricts calls between ports and IP addresses. You can use the following combinations of direction and access.

| | Allow | Deny |
|----------|---|---|
| Inbound | Accept requests from this IP address at the specified ports, according to the security mask. | Refuse requests from this IP address at the specified ports, according to the security mask. |
| Outbound | Allow requests to this IP address from the specified ports, according to the security mask. | Refuse requests to this IP address from the specified ports, according to the security mask. |

NOTE: Users at privileged ports can bypass outbound IP security.

The security table allows inbound or outbound connections between all IP addresses and all ports by default. You can change the default in either direction. When a user attempts to make either an inbound or an outbound network connection, the server searches through the security table for an entry with a matching address. If no such entry exists, the server uses the default Access setting to determine whether to allow or deny the connection.

You can set the default inbound and outbound connections to Deny, and then allow connections to specific addresses. By doing so, you prevent users from gaining access to most destinations while still providing them with access to the resources they need. This also protects your local network from unauthorized users.

Use these commands to change the default inbound and outbound Access:

DEFINE/SET PORT IP SECURITY DEFAULT OUTBOUND [ALLOW] [DENY] DEFINE/SET PORT IP SECURITY DEFAULT INBOUND [ALLOW] [DENY] .

Internet Security Examples

The following examples show security table entries for both inbound and outbound connections, and indicate the command for defining each entry. The examples apply to the network shown in Figure 25.



Figure 25. IP Network

Controlling Outbound Access

The three examples in this section show how entries in the security table can restrict access to resources on the network from server ports. These examples assume that the default outbound access is set to Allow.

Example 1

This entry denies access from Ports 7-9 to any subnet with the address 192.12.0.0, including Network A and Network B.

Security Table Entry:

| Port List | IP Address | Security Mask | Direction | Access |
|-----------|------------|---------------|-----------|--------|
| 7-9 | 192.12.0.0 | 255.255.0.0 | OUTBOUND | DENY |

Command:

DEFINE PORT 7-9 IP SECURITY OUTBOUND DENY 192.12.0.0 MASK 255.255.0.0

Example 2

This entry denies access from Ports 2-6 to all nodes on Network A. Users at Ports 2-6 can still gain access to Network B because the default outbound access is set to Allow.

Security Table Entry:

| Port List | IP Address | Security Mask | Direction | Access |
|-----------|--------------|---------------|-----------|--------|
| 2-6 | 192.12.119.0 | 255.255.255.0 | OUTBOUND | DENY |

Command:

DEFINE PORT 2-6 IP SECURITY OUTBOUND DENY 192.12.119.0 MASK 255.255.255.0

Example 3

This example assumes that the entry in Example 2 already exists in the security table. This entry allows access from Ports 2-6 to Node 1 (the printer on Network A) only. Users on Ports 2-6 cannot access Nodes 2 and 3 on Network A because the entry in Example 2 denies access to all nodes the network. Because the security mask in this entry is more specific than the entry in Example 2, however, this entry overrides the entry in Example 2.

Security Table Entry:

| Port List | IP Address | Security Mask | Direction | Access |
|-----------|--------------|-----------------|-----------|--------|
| 2-6 | 192.12.119.1 | 255.255.255.255 | OUTBOUND | ALLOW |

Command:

```
DEFINE PORT 2-6 IP SECURITY OUTBOUND ALLOW 192.12.119.1
MASK 255.255.255
```

Controlling Inbound Access

The three examples in this section show how entries in the security table can restrict access to server ports from nodes on the network. These examples assume that the default inbound access is set to Allow.

Example 1

This entry disables access to Ports 2-6 from any nodes in Network A or B:

Security Table Entry:

| Port List | IP Address | Security Mask | Direction | Access |
|-----------|------------|---------------|-----------|--------|
| 2-6 | 192.12.0.0 | 255.255.0.0 | INBOUND | DENY |

Command:

DEFINE PORT 2-6 IP SECURITY INBOUND DENY 192.12.0.0 MASK 255.255.0.0

Example 2

This entry disables access to Ports 7-9 from all nodes in Network B. Users on Network A can access Ports 7-9 because the default inbound access is set to Allow.

Security Table Entry:

| Port List | IP Address | Security Mask | Direction | Access |
|-----------|-------------|---------------|-----------|--------|
| 7-9 | 192.12.13.0 | 255.255.255.0 | INBOUND | DENY |

Command:

DEFINE PORT 7-9 IP SECURITY INBOUND DENY 192.12.13.0 MASK 255.255.255.0

Example 3

This entry assumes that the entry in Example 2 already exists in the security table. This entry enables access to Ports 7-9 from Node 1 in Network B *only*. Users on other nodes in Network B cannot access Ports 7-9 because the entry in Example 2 denies access to these ports from all nodes on the network. Because the security mask in this entry is more specific than the mask in Example 2, however, this entry overrides the entry in Example 2.

| Port List | IP Address | Security Mask | Direction | Access |
|-----------|-------------|-----------------|-----------|--------|
| 7-9 | 192.12.13.1 | 255.255.255.255 | INBOUND | DENY |

Command:

DEFINE PORT 7-9 IP SECURITY INBOUND DENY 192.12.13.1 MASK 255.255.255

Example 4

This entry prevents access to all destinations, because the default outbound access is set to Deny. You would use this entry when users are to be allowed access to a limited number of destinations.

Command:

DEFINE PORT ALL IP SECURITY OUTBOUND DEFAULT DENY

After issuing this command, you would create Allow entries for the destinations to which users are allowed to have access.

Removing Security Table Entries

Use these commands to remove entries from the server's IP Security table:

CLEAR/PURGE IP SECURITY [entry]

[ALL]

An *entry* refers to an entry number in the List/Show Server IP Security display.

Viewing IP Security Entries

Use these commands to view entries in the server's IP Security tables. Figure 26 and Figure 27 show sample displays.

LIST/SHOW/MONITOR SERVER IP SECURITY LIST/SHOW/MONITOR PORT port-number IP SECURITY INBOUND [ALLOW] [DENY] LIST/SHOW/MONITOR PORT port-number IP SECURITY OUTBOUND [ALLOW] [DENY] LIST/SHOW/MONITOR PORT port-number IP SECURITY ip-address[ALLOW] [DENY]

```
Xyplex> SHOW SERVER IP SECURITY
Ports Set to Default Inbound Allow: 1-8
Ports Set to Default Inbound Deny: 9-16
Ports Set to Default Outbound Allow: 1-8
Ports Set to Default Outbound Deny: 9-16
Internet Security
Entry
        Address
                                                            Port(s)
                       Mask
                                       Access
                                               Dir
1
        172.18.11.206
                       255.255.0.0
                                       Allow
                                                Outbound
                                                             1,4,5
        172.19.19.45
                        255.255.255.0 Allow
                                                             0,9,16
 2
                                                Inbound
 3
        172.21.1.40
                        255.255.255.255 Deny
                                                Outbound
                                                             1-4,7
```

Figure 26. Server IP Security Display

| Xyplex> : | SHOW PORT 1 IP S | ECURITY | | |
|-----------------------|-----------------------------------|-----------------|--------|-----------|
| Inbound I Outbound | Default: Allowe Default: Allow | d ed | | |
| Internet | Security | | | |
| Entry | Address | Mask | Access | Direction |
| 1 | 172.19.119.206 | 255.255.0.0 | Allow | Outbound |
| 2 | 172.20.119.45 | 255.255.255.0 | Allow | Inbound |
| 3 | 172.21.110.40 | 255.255.255.255 | Deny | Outbound |

Figure 27. Port IP Security Display

Using Scripts to Enhance Network Security

Scripts are files that reside on a host system and contain server commands. Users can run scripts from their own ports; or, network managers can require that the server run a script when a user logs in to a port. While scripts are not specifically designed for network security, you can use them to enhance security on the server. Refer to the *Advanced Configuration Guide* for more information about scripts. This section describes how server scripts can improve network security through dedicated services and through the dialback modem control feature.

Use this command to require a login script at a port:

DEFINE PORT [port-list] SCRIPT LOGIN REQUIRED
[ALL]

Dialback Modem Scripts

The Dialback feature authenticates modem users through a dialback script. When a modem user dials in to the access server, the server does the following:

- 1. Saves the username
- 2. Disconnects the user
- 3. Finds the dialback script for the user
- 4. Reestablishes the phone connection through the dialback script

The user must then reenter the original username. If the user does not enter a valid username, the server breaks the connection. The server stops trying to make a dialback connection if the remote modem it dials is busy or if the Port Dialback Timeout setting is exceeded.
Dialback scripts are similar to other scripts except that modem commands within the script must begin the line with #modem. Dialback scripts have the name "dialback," and exist in the user's script directory on the script server. All modem commands within a script must begin with #modem, rather than simply # .

A sample dialback script follows:

```
#control_script
# This is a dialback script.
#modem atdt5551978
```

The first line is a control command that begins all server scripts. The second line is an optional comment line (# followed by a space designates a line as a comment). The third line contains the phone number and the modem keyword. (Because it is a modem command, this line begins with #modem, rather than simply # .)

Pause Command

You might need to pause the script to give the modem time to cycle after hanging up, or if you issue an ATDT command after an ATZ command. Use this command to insert a pause in a script:

```
#pause n
```

The value *n* specifies the number of seconds to pause.

Enabling Dialback at a Port

Use this command to enable the Dialback setting at a port, or to disable it later:

```
DEFINE PORT [port-list] DIALBACK [ENABLED]
[ALL]
[DISABLED]
```

Advanced Configuration

Use this command to define the Dialback Timeout setting at a port. The default *timer-value* is 20 seconds; you can define a value from 5 to 60 (seconds).

DEFINE PORT [port-list] DIALBACK TIMEOUT timer-value
[ALL]

Example

Xyplex>> define port 1-12 dialback timeout 30

Dial-Up Security

More and more computer networks allow dial-up access for both practical and economic reasons. For example, dial-up access enables branch offices to reduce connection costs by connecting to a central site only when there is data to transfer to or from the central site. Dial-up access also allows individual users to connect from home where leased lines are unavailable or too costly.

With the benefit of dial-up services, however, comes the risk that unauthorized users will try to access network resources. To prevent such unauthorized access, called "attacks," computer networks use a variety of security schemes. Two of the best schemes are dial-back security and timesensitive passwords.

Dial-Back Security

The dial-back scheme assumes that an authorized user is always dialing in from the same place, usually home. The user dials in to an access server and supplies his or her user name. The access server then hangs up the connection, looks up the phone number for that user in a local database, and dials that number back. The user must again enter the user name. If it matches the user name entered at the first dial in, the user may then use the network. Dial-back security works well for a user dialing in from home, but it does not work for someone on the road dialing in from a different hotel room every night. To accommodate mobile users, there are many types of password schemes. The most sophisticated of these are designed to prevent unauthorized persons from capturing passwords, either by wire-tapping or by observing a user entering the password. Time-sensitive password schemes protect against this type of attack.

Time-Sensitive Passwords

With the time-sensitive password scheme, the user carries a security device the size of a credit card. The device displays a periodically changing number in an LCD display. When the user dials in and gives his or her user name, the access server prompts for a password. The user enters the number currently showing on the security card. To check the password, the access server queries a local security server that is running the same algorithm as the security card. If the passwords match, the user may then use the network.

Xyplex remote access products, including the MAXserver 1600 Series and the Network 3000 Model 3520 Remote Access Bridge/Router, support both dial-back security and time-sensitive passwords. Time-sensitive password protection is provided using Security Dynamics' SecurID system.

APD Port Authentication Command

When a new switch is enabled, users accessing through an APD port using PPP or SLIP will be authenticated if either PAP or CHAP is enabled on the port. Interactive users will be prompted after the APD message displays and continue to use RADIUS or KERBEROS authentication.

Use the following command to enable authentication and interactive mode for an APD port:

DEFINE PORT number APD AUTHENTICATION INTERACTIVE [ONLY] ENABLE/DISABLE If you disable interactive mode, authentication will be performed as previously.

NOTE: When you enable interactive mode also enable PAP or CHAP for users accessing through PPP or SLIP. Otherwise, users will have access without needing authentication.

AppleTalk Remote Access (ARAP) Notes

The following notes apply to the ARAP implementation:

- When there is no TFTP script server available on the network, Command Control Language (CCL) scripts and dial back scripts are unavailable.
- ARAP supports only one login password that is shared by all ARAP users. When Kerberos or SecurID authentication is performed, a username may be used that has an associated password and/or passcode.
- When Kerberos or SecurID authentication is not used, the server does not restrict access by user name. A user can login through Remote Access using any user name as long as the user specifies the correct server password. Specific user names are only used for locating a telephone number for dial back.
- To prevent AppleTalk "name collisions," do not have more than one Remote Access Server with a given name on an AppleTalk network.

CCL Notes (Using Modem-Based Compression)

The following notes apply to the CCL Notes:

- ARAP connections cannot use modem-based compression. Compression must be done by the communication server. Typically, CCL scripts contain commands that prevent the modem from negotiating V.42 LAP-M error correction or V.42bis compression. To use modem-based V.42 LAP-M error correction or V.42bis compression for connections that are made using particular protocols (excluding AppleTalk Remote Access Protocol (ARAP)), use CCL scripts which permit this feature to be negotiated. For more information about using CCL scripts, refer to the *Configuring Access Serving Features* guide.
- Modem-based MNP error correction is not supported on ports using CCL scripts.
- CCLs are not supported on a port with RADIUS Authentication enabled.

Packet Rejection Message

Occasionally, a PPP LCP Packet is received that has a 0 length for the options header. This causes the Access Server to go into an infinite loop.

During normal PPP LCP negotiations, a packet is rejected if the options header has a length of 0, and a new packet is sought. If this packet is accepted, the PPP negotiations proceed. The following message displays in the Accounting Log (if Verbose priority is set to 5 or above) when a packet is rejected:

LCP - Received Bad Structured Frame

If Kerberos or Securid is in use then the username and port number will also display. If no security or PAP is in use, then only the port number displays with the message. Advanced Configuration

Active User and Active Ports

The Active User and Port counters increments once when a user logs into a port using RADIUS.

SNMP

The RADIUS MIB is supported. The MIB number is 4.1.33.35.

ITS NTASC RADIUS Support

Xyplex Access Servers support ITS NTASC RADIUS on Windows NT servers. These hosts do not send back to the Xyplex, the "Service-Type and Framed-Protocol" attributes.

As a result, it looks like a missing parameter and does not bring up the ppp link. Since software version V6-0-1 S80, Xyplex Networks no longer requires that the "Service-Type and Framed-Protocol" Radius attributes be in the return packet from the Radius host. Upgrade to the latest V6-0-1 software as required.

How the Server Obtains the Current Time

Xyplex Access Servers provide a user-settable tool for specifying where the server obtains the current time. The tool is supported by access server units with at least 2 MB of memory. Telnet must be enabled to support the tool.

You can *require* the access server to obtain the time from a specific time server, in which case the server may only obtain the time from that server. Alternately, you can *enable* it to obtain the time from a specific time server, in which case if the server is unable to obtain the time from the specified time server, it tries to obtain it from the first available time server, following this order:

- Kerberos server through UDP, Port 37 (only if Kerberos is enabled)
- SecurID through UDP, Port 37 (only if SecurID is enabled)
- XMOP/MOP load server obtain time from VAX load server
- UDP broadcast (through Port 37)
- Clock starts at 00:00:00

The specific time server option is disabled by default. Use these commands to enable or require it, or to disable it later:

DEFINE/SET SERVER TIME SERVER [ENABLED *ip-address*] [REQUIRED *ip-address*] [DISABLED]

The *ip-address* that you enter with the Required keyword specifies the only time server that the access server may use. If the access server fails to obtain the time from this unit, it will issue time queries every 60 seconds until it is successful. The *ip-address* that you enter with the Enabled keyword specifies the "preferred" time server. If the access server fails to obtain the time from this unit within 60 seconds, it will try an alternate server — which typically means broadcasting a time query.

NOTES: Issuing the SET command instructs the access server to issue a time query to the designated time server immediately.

> For access servers that run Kerberos or SecurID, set the Time Server address to zero. Otherwise, if you have a Secondary Kerberos/SecurID server defined, the access server will never query the Secondary server.

Advanced Configuration

Example

Xyplex>> define server time server enabled 172.19.1.101

Obtaining the Time

If the access server has a configured time server, it sends a directed UDP query for TIME service to that unit shortly after booting. If it receives no response, and the Server Time Server setting is Enabled (not Required), the access server attempts to get the time from one of the other servers.

The access server attempts to resynchronize with the designated time server on a daily basis, between midnight and 2:00 AM. Similarly, the access server attempts to resynchronize with Kerberos or SecurID servers daily.

Server Alternate Status Display

The "Time Received From:" field on the Server Alternate Status display indicates the IP address of the time server where the access server obtained the current time.

Show Server Display

The Show Server display also indicates the current time server:

```
Xyplex> SHOW SERVER
TS/720 V6.0.1 Rom 4A0000 HW 00.02.00 Lat Protocol V5.2 Uptime: 0 00:26:56
Address:08-00-87-02-34-56 Name:X023456
                                              Ethernet: A Number: 0
Identification: Xyplex Access Server
Welcome:
         Welcome to the Xyplex Access Server.
Circuit Timer:
                                   Password Limit:
                                                           3
                      80
Console Port:
                       0
                                   Queue Limit:
                                                           24
Inactivity Timer: 30
Keepalive Timer: 20
                                  Retransmit Limit:
                                                           8
Keepalive Timer:
                      20
                                  Session Limit:
                                                          64
Multicast Timer:
                      30
                                  Software: XPCSRV20
                     100
                                 Identification Siz
Timezone:
Node Limit:
                                   Identification Size: 63
                 16384
                                                       04:00
Textpool Size:
Accounting Entries: 500
                                  Packet Count:
                                                            80
Nested Menu Size:
                       0
                                   Menu Name:
Userdata Delay:
                      50
Service Groups: 0
Time Server: 172.19.1.101 Enabled
Enabled Characteristics:
Announcements, Broadcast, Console Logout, Dump, Lock, Parameter Polling,
TFTP Parameters, Proprietary Parameters, TFTP Read Broadcasts, Purge Node,
Verbose Accounting
```

Figure 28. Show Server Display

Appendix A Compatibility Issues

LAT Compatibility

The Access Server Software is compatible with LAT Versions 5.1 and greater. It is not compatible with LAT Version 5.0, or earlier versions. LAT Version 5.1 is available with VMS Software Release 4.7, and later releases. For sites running VMS Software Releases 4.4 through 4.6, Digital Equipment Corporation provides support for LAT through a separate layered application product, LATplus.

TCP/IP Compatibility

The access server's TCP/IP software only supports the use of the Berkeley Internet Name Domain Protocol (BIND) for Domain name servers, which map user-specified domain names to IP addresses.

IP Router Compatibility

Xyplex Access Servers support directed TFTP load requests through IP routers that support the Proxy Address Resolution Protocol (Proxy ARP).

Loading Parameters with TFTP Using Backup (.bck) Parameter File

If the server detects that it has received a corrupted (damaged) parameter (.prm) file while loading parameters through TFTP, it will request a backup (.bck) parameter file from the same parameter server. Assuming that the backup parameter file is not corrupted, the server then loads parameters using the backup file.

When this occurs, the Show Parameter Server display shows the IP address of the parameter server in the "Loaded From" field and also indicates "Status: Failed" and "Reason: Invalid" — even though valid parameters were loaded via the .bck file. If this happens, overwrite the .prm file using the .bck file, so that both files contain the correct information. If you change any server settings and reboot the server before overwriting the .prm file with the .bck file, the settings you have assigned will be lost.

Appendix B

DEC Software Installation and Management Tools

You can use standard DEC LAT tools to manage a VAX/VMS load server or parameter server. The tools are described in the following sections. The tools are covered in detail in the documentation supplied by DEC. Refer to the Master Index supplied with your release of VMS software for more information.

DECnet Network Control Program (NCP)

The NCP utility enables you to make connections to the console port of the access server through the Maintenance Operations Protocol (MOP) Remote Console Facility. You can use the NCP utility to define the access server as a DECnet node and to troubleshoot network problems. The NCP utility is supplied as part of the DECnet software.

DSVCONFIG Utility

You can use the DSVCONFIG utility in place of some of the NCP commands when adding an access server to the network. This utility is supplied as part of DECserver software. Note that if you do not have the DSVCONFIG utility, you can use NCP commands instead. DEC Software Installation and Management Tools

Terminal Server Manager (TSM)

You can use this utility to manage the configuration of all access servers from a central location. TSM enables you to make connections to the console port of the access server through the Maintenance Operations Protocol (MOP) Remote Console Facility. TSM is available from DEC.

LAT Control Program (LATCP)

You use this program to set up and control the portion of the LAT software that runs at host computers/service nodes. LATCP is supplied with the VMS operating system for Releases 4.7 and later. LATCP is also supplied by DEC as part of the LATplus layered product. Typically, you use LATCP to create a service at a host, to which users can then log on, and to start LAT software running at the host. (You can use a DEC-supplied command procedure, LTLOAD.COM for this.)

LATCP is also useful when setting up host-initiated connections to an access server port. (An example of this is setting up a shared printer that is connected to an access server port.) In this case, you use LATCP to create an application port at a host, to map the application port to an access server port, and to control queue operations for the application port.

VMSINSTAL Utility

You use this program to install software on a VAX/VMS load server.

INDEX

%

% CPU used, 25% Memory Used, 17, 25% menu commands, 134

2

25th line using as a status line, 116

A

Access Server Service-Selection, 221 Access to Network Resources controlling, 209 account log clearing the, 184 default and verbose logs, 179 accounting entries, 180 accounting feature associated displays, 184 enabling the, 176 enabling the verbose account log, 181 memory considerations, 180 sample default account log, 181 verbose account file location, 182 Accounting Retry and Backoff Timer Process, 242 ACK bit, 37 Active User and Active Ports, 282 alternate Kerberos server defining the, 256 alternate keymaps

associated error codes, 113 alternate keymaps, for TN3270 defining, 111 APD Port Authentication, 279 AppleTalk Remote Access (ARAP) Notes, 280 ASCIITOEBCDIC translation table, 105 attributes supported for RADIUS, 236, 248 Authentication, 206 authenticationFailure trap defined, 62 authorized group, 211 available services display field, 25

B

Backup (.bck) Parameter File, 288 Bootstrap Protocol (BOOTP), 72, 73, 191

С

Callback Modes, 231 Callback-Framed User Mode, 232 Callback-Login Parameters, 231 CARD protocol for loading software/parameters, 190 CCL Notes (Using Modem-Based Compression), 281 client, SNMP defined, 65 coldStart trap defined, 62

command script feature how it works, 160 command buffer size affect on memory allocation, 18 command prompt, xi command script feature defined, 159 defining the script name, 170 directory requirements, 167 sample scripts, 174 script file, 160 script file execution/processing, 172 script server, 160 setting up the access server, 169 TFTP security mechanisms, 168 comment lines using in nested menu file, 139 communities, SNMP defining the, 68 community, SNMP defined, 65 configuration menu (initialization), 75 Configuring RADIUS Authentication on a Per-Port Basis, 219 Configuring RADIUS on the Access Server, 216 Configuring the RADIUS Server on the Host, 216 connected nodes, 25 connected sessions, 25 console logout setting enabling/disabling the, 72 console port, 70 contact, SNMP

defined, 69 ControlPoint, 62, 64 Conventions, xi csportd daemon defined, 121

D

daemons memory used, 8 daemons, UNIX enabling the, 121 setting up, 120 Data Encryption Standard (DES), 203 DECnet Network Control Program (NCP), 289 default account log, 179 default port numbers for TN3270 sessions, 98 DEFINE commands, 2 Define Server Daemon command, 8 DEFINE SERVER LOADDUMP [record|ALL] DEFAULT, 194 Define Server Nested Menu Size command, 141 Define Server Protocol command, 4 Define/Set Domain command, 80 Define/Set Parameter Server command, 77 Define/Set Server Internet Route command, 31 Define/Set Server Parameter Server Check command, 77 accounting feature, 175 DES encryption, 206 device cancel (DevCncl) for TN3270, 92 dialback script

defined, 160 Dial-Back Security, 278 Dial-Up Security, 278 Directed TFTP (DTFTP), 72, 75 defined, 192 discarded nodes, 25 domain name time-to-live (TTL), 80 domain name resolution, 78 domain name server using the server as a, 78 domain names affect on memory allocation, 15 learned, 79 obtaining/storing, 79 DSVCONFIG utility, 289 dump transmission through Internet protocols, 77 dynamic routing defined, 30

Ε

EBCDICTOASCII translation table, 105 encryption mechanisms, 206 error messages indicating memory problems, 16 escape sequences, for TN3270 special values, 95 exit reset string, for TN3270 defining an, 97 F

finger user information protocol, 122 fingerd memory used, 8 fingerd daemon defined, 120 using the, 122 flash memory card, 188 free memory display field, 26 fragmented, 5 free text pool display field, 26

G

```
get client, SNMP
defined, 67
get next request
SNMP, 62
get request
SNMP, 62
getting started, 1
```

host route, 29

Η

I

IBM 3270 display station functions for TN3270 keymap, 91 identification size affect on memory allocation, 17 import/export filters

for IPX RIP, 44 initialization record disabling an, 194 enabling/disabling an, 187 primary/secondary/tertiary, 187 viewing an, 186 initialization records, 185 Internet domain TTL setting, 79 Internet IP Reassembly setting, 82 Internet load address, 193 Internet Load Gateway, 194 Internet routing table size, 31 Internet Security getting started, 264 using, 208 Internet Security Information for the Server defining, 264 IP reassembly defined, 82 server setting, 82 IP rotary associated commands, 54 defining an, 52 IP route configuring an, 28 host and network routes, 29 IP Router Compatibility, 287 IP traffic filtering associated commands, 36 defined, 33 enabling/disabling, 34 examples, 38, 39, 40 filter criteria, 34

least/most specific criteria, 35 specifying a protocol, 37 IPX RIP import and export filters, 44 IPX RIP import/export filters defining, 45 defining RIP export filters, 45 defining RIP import filters, 46 IPX RIP import/export filtersfilters least/most specific criteria, 45 IPX SAP import/export filters defined, 47 defining SAP export filters, 48 defining SAP import filters, 50 filter criteria, 47 least/most specific filter, 48 IPX traffic filtering defined, 40 enabling/disabling, 42 example, 43 filter criteria, 40 least/most specific criteria, 41 italics, xi ITS NTASC RADIUS Support, 282

K

Kerberos defining settings, 256 enabling the state of, 255 getting started, 255 logins without, 258 specifying version 4 or 5, 255 Kerberos Authentication, 203 enabling, 255

using, 203 Kerberos Error Messages, 257 keymap for TN3270, 87 keymaps for TN3270 available through Xyplex, 87 modifying the, 90

L

LAT Compatibility, 287 LAT Control Program (LATCP), 290 LAT service groups affect on memory allocation, 17 LAT services effect on memory allocation, 14 LAT session memory used, 12 LATCP, 290 limited vs enabled, 235 Line 25 using as a status line, 116 load protocols configuring the, 75 Loading Parameters with TFTP, 288 loading software/parameters through Internet protocols, 72 local printer support via TN3270, 119 local services affect on memory allocation, 18 display field, 25 local terminal type for TN3270, 87

locally specified IP routes defined, 30 location defined, 69 location string defined through SNMP, 69 Login Password, 196 Login Password Prompt, 196 lpd memory used, 8 lpd demon defined, 121

Μ

Maintenance Password, 197 Management Information Base (MIB) defined, 62 MIB groups, 64 memory identifying problems, 15 management guidelines, 11 usage for session types, 12 memory allocation, 10 settings that affect, 13 memory usage for features and protocols, 6 memory used display field, 17 MIB kit, 64 MIBs how to obtain, 65 proprietary, 64 Monospace Typeface, xi

MOP protocol for loading/dumping, 190

Ν

nested menu feature creating the nested menu file, 134 debugging the menu file, 140 defined, 129 enabling/disabling on ports, 142 general guidelines, 139 how a port obtains menus, 131 how the server obtains the menu file, 131 memory allocation, 141 memory requirements, 128 naming the menu file, 142 number of levels, 129 port settings, 142 sample menu files, 144 server configuration, 140 specifying a top level menu, 143 specifying privileged menus, 143 top level menu,, 131 using comment lines, 139 using the, 128 NetWare service type, 47 network management through SNMP, 63 Network Operations Center (NOC), 62 network route, 29 node limit affect on memory allocation, 18 Nonprivileged, 198 NonVolitile Storage (NVS), 185

NVS protocol for loading software/parameters, 190

0

operational database, 2 optimizing server settings, 11 Outbound Port Security, 230

Р

packet buffers affect on memory allocation, 18, 21 display field, 26 Packet Count setting, 82, 83 Packet Rejection Message, 281 parameter databases operational and permanent, 2 parameter server check setting, 76 defined. 77 parameter server limit affect on memory allocation, 21 parameters retaining when upgrading software, 3 saving in permanent database, 76 parameters, for initialization resetting to defaults, 194 PASSCODE, 206 Passwords, 195 permanent database, 2 personal identification number (PIN), 206 port 0, 70 Port Access characteristic, 209 port internet TCP window size affect on memory allocation, 23

PORT PREFERRED SERVICE characteristic. 60 port typeahead buffer size affect on memory allocation, 23 ports default port numbers for Telnet, 98 default port numbers for TN3270, 98 PPP and SLIP Authentication defining, 221 PPP CHAP Authentication defining, 224 PPP PAP Authentication defining, 223 Preferred service, 60 primary Kerberos server defining the, 256 priority numbers for messages from UNIX daemons, 183 Privilege Levels, 198 Privileged, 198 Privileged Password, 196 prompt for privileged/mon-privileged users, xi proprietary MIBs, 64 protocols enabling through Define Server command, 4 protocols for loading/dumping changing through commands, 189 enabling/disabling the, 188

Q

queue entries display field, 25 queue limit affect on memory allocation, 19

R

RADIUS attributes, 236 getting started, 215 **RADIUS** Accounting defining, 238 setting up, 239 **RADIUS** Accounting Attributes, 248 **RADIUS** Accounting Client Operation, 241 RADIUS Accounting for Port Logins and Logouts defining, 240 **RADIUS** Accounting Information viewing, 245 **RADIUS** Accounting Logging Attempts Limits defining, 240 **RADIUS** Attribute Idle-Timeout, 248 **RADIUS** Authentication Attributes supported, 235 **RADIUS** Authentication Process understanding the, 201 Radius Callback (Dialback), 230 **RADIUS During Login** monitoring, 229 RADIUS Log Messages, 251 **RADIUS Requests** canceling, 244 **RADIUS Security**, 214 **RADIUS Server Parameters** displaying, 227

RADIUS Server-Selection, 225 **RADIUS Solicitation Mode** defining, 221 reachable nodes, 25 realm defining the, 256 Remote Console Facility, 290 resetting parameters to defaults, 194 resource errors, 26 Reverse Address Resolution Protocol (RARP), 72, 191 **RLOGIN** feature associated commands, 59 configuring the, 58 considerations, 59 rotary connection associated commands, 54 defining, 52 domain name storage, 56 on multiple servers, 55 via domain name, 55 routd daemon, 30 routed memory used, 8 routed daemon defined, 120 using the, 125 Routing Information Protocol (RIP), 125 dynamic routing via, 30 rwhod memory used, 8 rwhod daemon defined, 120

using the, 127

S

SAP types for IPX, 49 scanner feature Tn3270, 103 screenmap for TN3270, 87 screenmap color, for TN3270 defining the, 96 screenmap, for TN3270 actions, 94 modifying the, 93 screenmaps for TN3270 available from Xyplex, 87 script. See command script feature script echo setting, 170 script file # commands, 166 creating the, 164 the # character, 166 script server directory structure, 132, 162 setting up the, 131, 161 scroll function for TN3270, 92 SDI encryption, 206 secret specifying for primary Radius server, 219 Secure. 198 SecurID Authentication, 206 using, 206

SecurID Client Features, 206 security, 194 Security Dynamics Technologies, Inc, 206 Security Mask, 267 Server Change setting, 2 server identification size, 17 server node limit affect on memory allocation, 18 server packet count affect on memory allocation, 21 server queue limit affect on memory allocation, 19 Server Service Groups setting affect on memory allocation, 14 server session limit affect on memory allocation, 19 server textpool size affect on memory allocation, 20 Servers defining, 261 service types for SAP filters, 49 session limit affect on memory allocation, 19 session types memory used, 12 set client, SNMP defined, 67 SET commands, 2 set request SNMP, 62 Show Server displays indicating memory problems, 16

Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP), 61 SNMP, 282 traps, 62 SNMP security configuring, 65 software load image filename changing the, 191 solicitations accepted/rejected, 24 static routing defined, 30 status line information on line 25 (TN3270), 118 Superuser, xii Supported RADIUS Authentication Attributes, 235 SYN bit using for traffic filtering, 33, 37 syslogd daemon defined, 121 enabling the, 177

Т

TCP resequencing defined, 83 TCP window size affect on memory allocation, 18 TCP/IP Compatibility, 287 Telnet Console command, 71 Telnet newline filtering setting, 90 Telnet session memory used, 12

text pool area defined, 10 text pool size affect on memory allocation, 20 TFTP broadcasts emininating the, 76 time how the server obtains, 282 time server address, 283 defined, 282 Time Server Enhancement, 212 TN3270 creating new device type, 88 defined, 84 defining TN3270 devices, 87 enabling extended attributes, 86 enabling the TN3270 protocol, 85 local printer support, 119 scanner feature, 103 translation tables, 85 TN3270 command using the, 88 TN3270 device assigning to a port, 97 TN3270 sessions default port numbers, 98 TN3270 terminaltype defining the, 89 TN3270 translation table assigning to a port, 97, 108 TN3270 translation tables defining the, 104

TN3278TYPE, 87 defining the, 89 Tn3720 session memory used, 12 traffic filters for IP, 33 IPX, 40 translation table, for TN3270 defining/creating a, 104 translation tables for TN3270, 85 trap client defining a, 65 trap community, SNMP defining a, 68 trap, SNMP defined, 62 Trivial File Transfer Protocol (TFTP), 72, 73, 159 typeahead buffers affect on memory allocation, 17 defined, 22 typeahead size affect on memory allocation, 22 typographical conventions, xi

U

UDP Port Number defining, 240 UNIX daemons enabling/disabling, 8 setting up, 120 upgrading memory, 12

USENGLSH language translation table assigning to a port, 97 user prompt, xii Using Scripts to Enhance Network Security, 276

V

VMSINSTAL utility, 290

W

WWW site for Xyplex, 64

Х

verbose account log, 179 enabling the, 181 verbose priority number defined, 182 version number of Kerberos (4 or 5), 255

XMOP protocol for loading/dumping, 190 Xremote Session memory used, 12 Xyplex WWW site, 64